

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
<b>SECTION I – INTRODUCTION</b>	
<b>A. Introduction</b> .....	1
<b>B. Medical Certification</b> .....	8
Excerpt of U.S. Certificate of Death .....	9
U.S. Standard Certificate of Death.....	10
<b>SECTION II – GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS</b>	
<b>A. Introduction</b> .....	13
1. Excessive Codes .....	13
2. Created Codes .....	15
3. “Dagger and asterisk” codes .....	21
<b>B. General coding concept</b> .....	22
1. Definitions and types of diagnostic entities .....	22
a. One-term entity .....	22
b. Multiple one-term entity .....	25
c. Adjectival modifier reported with multiple conditions .....	27
2. Parenthetical entries .....	27
3. Special diagnostic entities .....	28
4. Plural form of disease.....	29
5. Implied “disease” .....	30
<b>C. Format</b> .....	31
1. “Due to” relationships involving more than <b>four</b> causally related conditions .....	31
2. Connecting terms .....	31
a. “Due to” written in or implied .....	31
b. Not indicating a “due to” relationship .....	34
3. Condition entered above line I(a) .....	34
4. Condition reported between lines in Part I .....	35
5. Condition reported as due to I(a), I(b), or I(c) .....	36
6. Conditions reported in Part II.....	37
7. Deletion of “due to” on the death certificate .....	37
8. Deletion of “Part II” on death certificate .....	38
9. Numbering of causes reported in Part I .....	39
10. Punctuation marks.....	40
11. Conditions in the duration box.....	41

Instruction Manual Part 2b  
Table of Contents (continued)

---

<b>D. Doubtful diagnosis</b> .....	42
1. Doubtful qualifying expression.....	42
2. Interpretations of “either...or...” .....	43
<b>E. Conditions specified as “healed” or “history of”</b> .....	46
<b>F. Coding entries such as “same,” “ditto (”),” “as above”</b> .....	47
<b>G. Conditions qualified by “postmortem,” “rule out,”</b> <b>“ruled out,” “r/o”</b> .....	48
<b>H. Non-indexed and illegible entries</b> .....	49
1. Terms that are not indexed.....	49
2. Illegible entries.....	49
<b>I. Coding one-character reject codes</b> .....	50
1. Reject code 1-5 – Inconsistent duration.....	50
2. Reject code 9 – More than four “due to” statements .....	52
<b>J. Inclusion of additional information (AI) to mortality</b> <b>source documents</b> .....	53
<b>K. Amended certificates</b> .....	56
<b>L. Effect of age of decedent on classification</b> .....	57
1. NEWBORN OR NEONATAL means <u>less than 28 days</u> of age at the time of death .....	57
2. INFANT OR INFANTILE means <u>less than 1 year</u> of age at the time of death .....	57
3. CHILD, CHILDHOOD means <u>less than 18 years</u> of age at the time of death .....	58
4. Congenital anomalies (Q00-Q99) .....	58
5. Congenital syphilis.....	59
6. Age limitation.....	60
<b>M. Sex limitations</b> .....	62
<b>N. Effect of duration on assignment of codes</b> .....	64
1. Qualifying conditions as acute or chronic .....	64
2. Subacute .....	65
3. Acute exacerbation.....	66
4. Acute and chronic .....	66
5. Qualifying conditions as congenital or acquired .....	67
6. Two conditions with one duration .....	67
7. Conflict in durations.....	68
8. Span of dates .....	68

<b>O.</b>	<b>Relating and modifying conditions</b> .....	69
1.	Implied site of disease.....	69
a.	Basic instructions for implied site of a disease.....	69
b.	Relating specific categories .....	72
c.	Exceptions to relating and modifying instructions .....	74
2.	Coding conditions classified to injuries as disease conditions .....	76
 <b>SECTION III – INTENT OF CERTIFIER</b> .....		80
1.	Charcot’s Arthropathy (A521).....	81
2.	General Paresis (A521).....	82
3.	Organisms and Infection NOS (B99) .....	84
4.	Erythremia (C940).....	89
5.	Polycythemia (D45).....	90
6.	Hemolytic Anemia (D589) .....	91
7.	Sideroblastic Anemia (D643) .....	92
8.	Hemorrhagic Purpura NOS (D693).....	93
9.	Thrombocytopenia (D696) .....	94
10.	Hyperparathyroidism (E213) .....	96
11.	Hyperaldosteronism (E269).....	97
12.	Lactase Deficiency (E730).....	98
13.	Alcohol (F100, F101, F109, R780, R826, R893) .....	99
14.	Korsakov’s Disease, Psychosis, or Syndrome (F106).....	101
15.	Drug Use NOS - Named Drug Use (F11-F16, F18-F19) .....	102
16.	Tobacco Use (F179).....	105
17.	Psychotic Episode NOS (F239).....	106
18.	Psychosis (any F29), Mental Disorder (any F99) .....	107
19.	Dissociative Disorder (F449).....	108
20.	Personality Disorder (F609), Personality Change (Enduring) (F629)..	109
21.	Parkinson’s Disease (G20).....	110
22.	Cerebral Sclerosis (G379).....	111
23.	Myopathy (G729).....	112
24.	Brain Damage, child (G809).....	113
25.	Paralysis (any G81, G82, or G83 excluding senile paralysis) .....	114
26.	Cataract (H269).....	115
27.	Varices NOS and Bleeding Varices (I839).....	116
28.	Pneumonia in J189 or J188, Bronchopneumonia (J180), Lobar pneumonia, organism unspecified only in J181 .....	117

Instruction Manual Part 2b  
 Table of Contents (continued)

---

29. Pneumoconiosis (J64) .....	118
30. Diaphragmatic Hernia in K44.- .....	119
31. Laennec's Cirrhosis (K703).....	120
32. Biliary Cirrhosis NOS (K745).....	121
33. Lupus Erythematosus (L930), Lupus (L930) .....	122
34. Gout (M109) .....	123
35. Polyarthrosis (M159) .....	124
36. Coxarthrosis (M169).....	125
37. Gonarthrosis (M179).....	126
38. Arthrosis (M199) .....	127
39. Kyphosis (M402) .....	128
40. Scoliosis (M419).....	129
41. Osteonecrosis (M879).....	130
42. Dysmenorrhea (N946) .....	131
43. Cesarean Delivery for Inertia Uterus (O622), Cervical Dystocia (0622), Hypotonic Labor (0622), Hypotonic Uterus Dysfunction (O622), Inadequate Uterus Contraction (O622), Uterine Inertia during Labor (O622), .....	132
44. Intracranial Nontraumatic Hemorrhage of Fetus and Newborn (P52).....	133
45. Septal Defect (atrial), (auricular), (heart), (ventricular) (Q210, Q211, Q212, Q219) .....	134
46. Hypoplasia or Dysplasia of Lung NOS (Q336).....	135
47. Injury (S000-T149).....	136
48. Fracture (any site) (T142).....	137
49. Starvation NOS (T730).....	139

**SECTION IV – CLASSIFICATION OF CERTAIN ICD CATEGORIES**

<b>A. Neoplasms (C00-D48) .....</b>	<b>140</b>
A. Malignant Neoplasms (C00-C96).....	142
1. Neoplasms stated to be secondary .....	145
2. Malignant neoplasms with primary site indicated .....	145
3. Site specific neoplasms .....	147
4. Other morphological types of neoplasms .....	148
5. Independent (primary) sites .....	149
6. Metastases .....	152
7. Multiple sites.....	154
8. Metastatic neoplasms .....	157

Instruction Manual Part 2b  
 Table of Contents (continued)

---

9.	Primary site unknown .....	168
10	Implication of malignancy .....	169
11.	Sites with prefixes or imprecise definitions.....	170
12.	Malignant neoplasms described with “either/or” .....	171
13.	Mass or lesion with malignant neoplasms .....	171
<b>B.</b>	<b>Rheumatic Heart Diseases</b> .....	172
1.	Heart diseases considered to be described as rheumatic.....	172
2.	Distinguishing between active and chronic rheumatic heart disease .....	173
3.	Valvular diseases jointly reported.....	175
4.	Valvular diseases not indicated to be rheumatic.....	176
<b>C.</b>	<b>Pregnancy, Childbirth and the Puerperium (O00-O99)</b> .....	179
1.	General Information .....	179
2.	Pregnancy or Childbirth without mention of complication .....	180
3.	Pregnancy with abortive outcome (O000-O089).....	181
4.	Other complications of pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium (O00-O99) .....	183
5.	Delivery reported with anesthetic death or anesthesia.....	185
6.	Operative delivery .....	186
<b>D.</b>	<b>Congenital Conditions</b> .....	188
<b>E.</b>	<b>Conditions of Early Infancy (P000-P969)</b> .....	190
<b>F.</b>	<b>Sequela</b> .....	192
1.	B900-B909 Sequela of tuberculosis.....	193
2.	B91 Sequela of acute poliomyelitis .....	194
3.	B92 Sequela of leprosy .....	195
4.	B940 Sequela of trachoma .....	195
5.	B941 Sequela of viral encephalitis.....	196
6.	B942 Sequela of viral hepatitis .....	197
7.	B948 Sequela of other specified infectious and parasitic diseases, B949 Sequela of unspecified infectious and parasitic diseases ....	197
8.	E640-E649 Sequela of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies.....	198
9.	E68 Sequela of hyperalimentation .....	199
10.	G09 Sequela of inflammatory diseases of central nervous system.....	199
11.	I690-I698 Sequela of cerebrovascular disease .....	200
12.	O97 Sequela of direct obstetric cause .....	201

<b>G.</b>	<b>Ill-Defined and Unknown Causes</b> .....	202
1.	Sudden infant death syndrome (R95).....	202
2.	Other sudden death and other unspecified cause (R960-R961, R98-R99).....	202
3.	Unknown cause (R97).....	205
 <b>SECTION V –EFFECTS OF EXTERNAL CAUSE OF INJURY AND EXTERNAL CAUSES OF INJURY AND POISONING</b>		
<b>A.</b>	<b>External Cause Code (E-Code) Concept</b> .....	207
1.	Use of Index .....	208
2.	Use of Tabular List.....	208
3.	Place of occurrence of external cause .....	209
4.	Manner of death (Item 37) on death certificate .....	209
5.	Nature of injury and external cause code lists .....	211
<b>B.</b>	<b>Placement of nature of injury and external cause codes</b> .....	215
<b>C.</b>	<b>Use of ampersand</b> .....	217
<b>D.</b>	<b>Certifications with mention of nature of injury and without mention of external cause</b> .....	219
<b>E.</b>	<b>Conditions qualified as traumatic</b> .....	222
<b>F.</b>	<b>Assumption of nature of injury code</b> .....	228
<b>G.</b>	<b>Multiple injuries (T00-T07)</b> .....	230
<b>H.</b>	<b>Burns: Multiple degrees of burns/percentage of body surface burned</b> .....	232
<b>I.</b>	<b>Specified types and sites of injuries</b> .....	234
<b>J.</b>	<b>Transportation accidents (V01-V99)</b> .....	235
<b>K.</b>	<b>Falls</b> .....	248
1.	Other fall on same level (W18).....	248
2.	Unspecified fall (W19).....	248
<b>L.</b>	<b>Natural and environmental factors</b> .....	249
1.	Lightning .....	249
2.	Exposure (cold) and hypothermia .....	249
<b>M.</b>	<b>Firearms and firearm injuries</b> .....	251
1.	Coding specific types of firearms .....	251
2.	External cause code .....	252
3.	Nature of injury code .....	253
4.	Other firearm examples.....	254
<b>N.</b>	<b>Child abuse, battering and other maltreatment (Y070-Y079)</b> .....	255
<b>O.</b>	<b>Guides for differentiating between effects of external causes classifiable to Chapters I – XVIII and Chapter XIX</b> .....	257

Instruction Manual Part 2b  
Table of Contents (continued)

---

<b>P. Threats to breathing</b> .....	259
<b>Q. Poisoning</b> .....	276
1. Poisoning by substances other than drugs .....	276
a. Carbon monoxide poisoning .....	277
b. Inhalation and “sniffing” sprays and aerosol substances .....	278
c. Intoxication by certain substances or toxic poisoning due to disease .....	278
d. Condition qualified as “toxic” with poisoning reported .....	279
2. Poisoning by drugs .....	280
3. Percentage of drug(s) in blood .....	284
4. Poisoning by alcohol and drugs .....	285
5. Intoxication (acute) NOS due to specified substances .....	287
<b>R. Complication of medical and surgical care (Y40-Y84)</b> .....	288
1. Drugs, medicaments, and biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59) .....	290
2. Surgical procedures as the cause of abnormal reaction of the patient or later complication (Y83) .....	300
a. Complications of surgical procedures .....	300
b. Condition necessitating surgery .....	313
c. Conditions qualified as postoperative .....	319
d. Complication as first entry on lowest used line in Part I .....	324
e. Ill-defined condition as first entry on lowest used line in Part I .....	328
f. Relating surgical procedure to condition for which surgery was performed .....	336
g. Complications of amputation and amputation stump .....	338
3. Complications of medical procedures other than surgical (Y84) .....	339
4. Complication of procedures involving administration of drugs, radiation, and instruments .....	346
5. Complication of radiation during medical care (Y842) .....	348
6. Misadventures to patients during surgical and medical care (Y600-Y69) .....	351
<b>S. Sequela of injuries, poisonings, and other consequences of external causes</b> .....	354
1. Sequela of injuries, poisoning, and other consequences of external causes (T900-T983) .....	354
2. Sequela of external causes (Y850-Y899) .....	356

Instruction Manual Part 2b  
Table of Contents (continued)

---

**APPENDIX A - STANDARD ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS ..... 360**

**APPENDIX B - SYNONYMOUS SITES..... 378**

**APPENDIX C - GEOGRAPHIC CODES ..... 379**

**APPENDIX D - CODE FOR PLACE OF INJURY ..... 380**

**APPENDIX E - ACTIVITY CODES ..... 389**

**APPENDIX F - SUBSTITUTE CODES ..... 391**

**APPENDIX G -TERRORISM CLASSIFICATION (\*U01-\*U03) ..... 393**

**APPENDIX H - ADDITIONAL DRUG EXAMPLES ..... 405**

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2004

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

### A. INTRODUCTION

This manual provides instructions to mortality medical coders and nosologists for coding multiple causes of death from death certificates filed in the states. These mortality coding instructions are used by both the state vital statistics programs and the National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS), which is the Federal agency responsible for the compilation of U.S. statistics on causes of death. NCHS is part of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

In coding causes of death, NCHS adheres to the World Health Organization Nomenclature Regulations specified in the most recent revision of the International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems (ICD). NCHS also uses the ICD international rules for selecting the underlying cause of death for primary mortality tabulation in accordance with the international rules.

Beginning with deaths occurring in 1999, the Tenth Revision of the ICD (ICD-10) is being used for coding and classifying causes of death. This revision of the Classification is published by the World Health Organization (WHO) and consists of three volumes. Volume 1 contains a list of three-character categories, the tabular list of inclusions, and the four-character subcategories. The supplementary Z code appears in Volume 1 but is not used for classifying mortality data. Optional fifth characters are provided for certain categories and an optional independent four-character coding system is provided to classify histological varieties of neoplasm, prefixed by the letter M (for morphology) and followed by a fifth character indicating behavior. These optional codes, except those for place of occurrence of external cause and activity code related to external cause codes, are not used in NCHS. The place code and activity code are used as supplementary codes rather than as additional characters. Volume 2 includes the international rules and notes for use in classifying and tabulating underlying cause-of-death data. Volume 3 is an alphabetical index containing a comprehensive list of terms for use in coding. Copies of these volumes may be purchased in hard-copy or on diskette from the following address:

WHO Publications Center  
49 Sheridan Avenue  
Albany, New York 12210  
Tel. 518-436-9686

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2004

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

NCHS has prepared an updated version of Volume 1 and Volume 3 to be used for both underlying and multiple cause-of-death coding. The major purpose of the updated version is to provide a single published source of code assignments including terms not indexed in Volume 3 of ICD-10. NCHS has included all nonindexed terms encountered in the coding of deaths during 1979-1994, under the Ninth Revision of the International Classification of Diseases (ICD-9). With the availability of the updated Volumes 1 and 3, NCHS will discontinue publishing the Part 2e manual, Nonindexed Terms, Standard Abbreviations, and State Geographic Codes Used in Mortality Data Classification, which was first published in 1983. Due to copyright considerations, the updated Volumes 1 and 3 may not be reproduced for distribution outside of NCHS and State vital statistics agencies.

The basic purpose of this manual is to document concepts and instructions for coding multiple causes of death, which were developed by NCHS for use with the Eighth Revision of the ICD adapted for use in the United States (ICDA-8), and which were updated to ICD-9, and subsequently to ICD-10. The coding concepts are generally consistent with provisions of ICD-10. Thus, this manual should be used with ICD-10, Volumes 1 and 3 as updated by NCHS. The list of abbreviations used in medical terminology (Appendix A), the list of synonymous sites (Appendix B), and the list of geographic codes (Appendix C) are included in this publication. Since input format and positions vary according to the type of data entry equipment being used, the instructions for entering the identifying information and ICD-10 codes for death certificates are in Part 2d, Procedures for Mortality Medical Data System File Preparation and Maintenance. Part 2d contains instructions for use of transcription sheets for manual entry of codes with subsequent keying of records by various types of key entry equipment, and instructions for simultaneous coding\data entry various types of equipment.

NCHS does not use the “dagger and asterisk” system which WHO introduced in ICD-9 and continued in ICD-10. For some medical conditions, this system provides two codes, which distinguish between the etiology or underlying disease process and the manifestation or complication for selected conditions. The etiology or underlying disease codes is denoted with a dagger (†) and the manifestation or complication code by an asterisk (\*) following the code. For example, Coxsackie myocarditis has a code (B33.2†) marked with a dagger in the chapter for infectious and parasitic diseases and a different code (I41.1\*) marked with an asterisk in the chapter for diseases of the circulatory system. Similarly, diabetic nephropathy has a dagger code (E14.2 †) in the chapter relating to endocrine disease and an asterisk code (N08.3\*) in the genitourinary system chapter. Under ICD-9, limited use was made of the asterisk codes in classifying mortality data for data years 1979-1982. Effective July 1982 the use of asterisk codes in mortality coding was discontinued and will not be used in the 10<sup>th</sup> revision for mortality coding. NCHS assigns only the dagger code to such conditions.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2004

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

The multiple cause-of-death codes are used as inputs to the ACME program (Automated Classification of Medical Entities) developed by NCHS to automatically select the underlying cause of death, and the TRANSAX program (Translation of Axes) used to produce multiple cause-of-death statistics, beginning with deaths occurring in 1968. As inputs, the computer programs require codes for each condition reported on the death certificate, usually in the order in which the information is recorded.

The outputs of the ACME program are the traditional underlying cause-of-death codes selected according to the selection and modification rules of the Classification, the same cause that would be selected using manual underlying cause-of-death coding instructions specified in Instruction Manual Part 2a. Thus, a single cause is associated with each decedent.

Using the same input codes, the TRANSAX program generates two sets of outputs: “entity-axis” codes that reflect the placement of each condition on the certificate for each decedent; and “record-axis” codes that, where appropriate, link two or more diagnostic conditions to form composite codes that are classifiable to a single code, according to the provisions of the Classification. Record axis codes are preferred for multiple cause tabulation to better convey the intent of the certifier, and to eliminate redundant cause-of-death information (see Instruction Manual Part 2f).

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2004

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

### Major Revisions from Previous Manuals

1. All information from the 2003 erratas has been incorporated into this edition.
2. Corrections have been made to clarify instructions, spelling, and format throughout the manual. These changes are not specifically noted.
3. Section II, Part A, Created codes, deleted created code for Dementia NOS.
4. Section II, Part A, Created codes, added created codes for types of Cardiomyopathy qualified as familial, idiopathic, and primary.
5. Section II, Part A, Created codes, added created code for Chronic pneumonia and interstitial pneumonia, not elsewhere classified.
6. Section II, Part B, General Coding Concept, added “hypoxemic” to list of adjectival modifiers that indicate condition should be considered a one-term entity.
7. Section II, Part B, General Coding Concept, added instruction with terms to be interpreted as Alzheimer’s dementia.
8. Section II, Part C, Format, revised some examples to be more typical of how a certifier would actually report them.
9. Section II, Part G, Conditions Specified as “Rule Out,” “Ruled Out,” “R/O”, added “postmortem” to list.
10. Section II, Part O, Relaying and Modifying Conditions, instructions are rearranged.
11. Section III, Part A, Intent of Certifier, added a table of instructions for coding Laennec’s cirrhosis NOS as nonalcoholic Laennec’s cirrhosis.
12. Section III, Part A, Intent of Certifier, revised instructions for coding Starvation NOS as Malnutrition.
13. Section IV, Part A, Neoplasms, added an instruction to code malignant neoplasms of lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue to morphological type, not site.
14. Section IV, Part E, Conditions of Early Infancy, added instructions for coding endocrine and metabolic disorders on a newborn’s record.
15. Section IV, Part G, Ill-defined and Unknown Causes, Unknown Cause, deleted “unspecified” from list.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2004

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

16. Section V, Part A, External Cause Code Concept, Use of Index, instructions for complications of surgery was deleted.
17. Section V, Part A, External Cause Code Concept, a statement was added that a N-code is coded each time a term requiring a N-code is reported.
18. Section V, Part A, External Cause Code Concept, some terms were moved from the E-code only list to the N and E code list.
19. Section V, Part E, Conditions Qualified as Traumatic, statement of “code conditions as traumatic when they are reported due or with” was amended to “code conditions as traumatic when they are reported on the certificate with.”
20. Section V, Part E, Conditions Qualified as Traumatic, added instructions for coding encephalitis, gastrointestinal hemorrhage and conditions classified to Chapters I-XVIII as traumatic.
21. Section V, Part F, Assumption of Nature of Injury Code, amended instructions for coding a disease condition reported due to an External Cause code only.
22. Section V, Part I, Specified Types and Sites of Injuries, amended instructions to clarify coding specified types and sites of injuries.
23. Section V, Part J, Transportation Accidents, added instructions for fall from transport vehicle.
24. Section V, Part J, Transportation Accidents, added an instruction for classifying the victim as a pedestrian.
25. Section V, Part K, Falls, added statements to interpret as Other fall on same level.
26. Section V, Part M, Gunshot Injury, Gunshot Wound, rearranged instructions and added instructions for coding terms transferred from E-code only list to N and E-code list.
27. Section V, Part Q, Poisoning, Poisoning by drugs, added instruction to consider Toxicity (of a site) by a drug as drug poisoning.
28. Section V, Part Q, Poisoning, Poisoning by drugs, rearranged instructions for combinations of drugs, added instruction for combination of drugs classified to the same external cause code.
29. Section V, Part Q, Poisoning, Carbon monoxide poisoning, rearranged instructions for carbon monoxide poisoning from motor vehicle exhaust gas.
30. Section V, Part R, Complications of Medical and Surgical Care, deleted coronary heart disease from list of terms that are not considered as a complication of surgery.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2004

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

31. Section V, Part R, Complications of Medical and Surgical Care, Condition necessitating surgery, rearranged some of the instructions and added an example for the instruction to not precede the reason for surgery with an ampersand if a complication is not coded.
32. Section V, Part R, Complications of Medical and Surgical Care, Condition necessitating surgery, added an instruction to code hydrocephalus as reason for atrio-ventricular or ventricular-peritoneal shunt.
33. Section V, Part R, Complications of Medical and Surgical Care, Relating surgical procedure to condition for which surgery was performed, added an example to relate the site of valvular heart disease to the site of the specified valve surgery.
34. Section V, Part S, Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and Other Consequences of External Causes, added statement to nature of injury and external cause instructions to code as sequela when stated as “sequela of” unless the interval between date of injury and date of death is less than 1 year.
35. Appendix A, Standard Abbreviations and Symbols, added abbreviations and emphasized instruction when an abbreviation represents more than one term, determine correct term by using other information on certificate. Deleted RF for Rheumatic fever.
36. Appendix B, Synonymous Sites, added torso as synonymous site with body.
37. Appendix H, Additional Drug Examples, added examples for toxicity of a site by drug and drug intake.

Other manuals relating to coding causes of death are:

Part 2a, NCHS Instructions for Classifying the Underlying Cause of Death, 2004

Part 2c, ICD-10 ACME Decision Tables for Classifying the Underlying Causes of Death, 2004

Part 2d, Procedures for Mortality Medical Data System File Preparation and Maintenance

**INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2004**

**SECTION I**

**Introduction**

---

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2003

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

---

### B. MEDICAL CERTIFICATION

The U. S. Standard Certificate of Death provides spaces for the certifying physician, coroner, or medical examiner to record pertinent information concerning the diseases, morbid conditions, and injuries which either resulted in or contributed to death as well as the circumstances of the accident or violence which produced any such injuries. The medical certification portion of the death certificate includes items 32-44. It is designed to obtain the opinion of the certifier as to the relationship and relative significance of the causes, which he reports.

A cause of death is the morbid condition or disease process, abnormality, injury, or poisoning leading directly or indirectly to death. The underlying cause of death is the disease or injury, which initiated the train of morbid events leading directly or indirectly to death or the circumstances of the accident or violence, which produced the fatal injury. A death often results from the combined effect of two or more conditions. These conditions may be completely unrelated, arising independently of each other or they may be causally related to each other; that is, one cause may lead to another which in turn leads to a third cause, etc.

The order in which the certifier is requested to arrange the causes of death upon the certification form facilitates the selection of the **underlying cause** when two or more causes are reported. He is requested to report in Part I on line (a) the immediate cause of death and the antecedent conditions on lines (b), (c), and (d) which gave rise to the cause reported on I(a), **the underlying cause** being stated lowest in the sequence of events. However, no entry is necessary on I(b), I(c), or I(d) if the immediate cause of death, stated on I(a) describes completely the sequence of events. If the decedent had more than four causally related conditions relating to death, the certifier is requested to add lines (e), (f), etc., so all conditions related to the immediate cause of death are entered in Part I with only one condition to a line.

Any other significant condition which unfavorably influenced the course of the morbid process and thus contributed to the fatal outcome but not resulting in the underlying cause given in Part I is entered in Part II.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2003

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

Excerpt from DRAFT 07/08/2002 U.S. STANDARD DEATH CERTIFICATE

NAME OF DECEDENT For use by physician or institution	To Be Completed/Verified By: FUNERAL DIRECTOR	1. DECEDENT'S LEGAL NAME (include AKA's if any) (First, Middle, Last)		2. SEX	3. SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER		
		4a. AGE-Last Birthday (Years)	4b. UNDER 1 YEAR Months      Days	4c. UNDER 1 DAY Hours      Minutes	5. DATE OF BIRTH (Mo/Day/Yr)	6. BIRTHPLACE (City and State or Foreign Country)	
		7a. RESIDENCE-STATE		7b. COUNTY	7c. CITY OR TOWN		
		7d. STREET AND NUMBER			7e. APT. NO.	7f. ZIP CODE	7g. INSIDE CITY LIMITS? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
		8. EVER IN US ARMED FORCES? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		9. MARITAL STATUS AT TIME OF DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Married, but separated <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Never Married <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown		10. SURVIVING SPOUSE'S NAME (if wife, give name prior to first marriage)	
		11. FATHER'S NAME (First, Middle, Last)			12. MOTHER'S NAME PRIOR TO FIRST MARRIAGE (First, Middle, Last)		
		13a. INFORMANT'S NAME		13b. RELATIONSHIP TO DECEDENT	13c. MAILING ADDRESS (Street and Number, City, State, Zip Code)		
		14. PLACE OF DEATH (Check only one: see instructions) IF DEATH OCCURRED IN A HOSPITAL: <input type="checkbox"/> Inpatient <input type="checkbox"/> Emergency Room/Outpatient <input type="checkbox"/> Dead on Arrival IF DEATH OCCURRED SOMEWHERE OTHER THAN A HOSPITAL: <input type="checkbox"/> Hospice facility <input type="checkbox"/> Nursing home/Long term care facility <input type="checkbox"/> Decedent's home <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify):					
		15. FACILITY NAME (if not institution, give street & number)			16. CITY OR TOWN, STATE, AND ZIP CODE		17. COUNTY OF DEATH
		18. METHOD OF DISPOSITION: <input type="checkbox"/> Burial <input type="checkbox"/> Cremation <input type="checkbox"/> Donation <input type="checkbox"/> Entombment <input type="checkbox"/> Removal from State <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify):					
		20. LOCATION-CITY, TOWN, AND STATE			21. NAME AND COMPLETE ADDRESS OF FUNERAL FACILITY		
		22. SIGNATURE OF FUNERAL SERVICE LICENSEE OR OTHER AGENT				23. LICENSE NUMBER (Of Licensee)	
		ITEMS 24-28 MUST BE COMPLETED BY PERSON WHO PRONOUNCES OR CERTIFIES DEATH				24. DATE PRONOUNCED DEAD (Mo/Day/Yr)	25. TIME PRONOUNCED DEAD
26. SIGNATURE OF PERSON PRONOUNCING DEATH (Only when applicable)			27. LICENSE NUMBER	28. DATE SIGNED (Mo/Day/Yr)			
29. ACTUAL OR PRESUMED DATE OF DEATH (Mo/Day/Yr) (Spell Month)			30. ACTUAL OR PRESUMED TIME OF DEATH		31. WAS MEDICAL EXAMINER OR CORONER CONTACTED? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		
<b>CAUSE OF DEATH (See instructions and examples)</b> 32. PART I. Enter the chain of events--diseases, injuries, or complications--that directly caused the death. DO NOT enter terminal events such as cardiac arrest, respiratory arrest, or ventricular fibrillation without showing the etiology. DO NOT ABBREVIATE. Enter only one cause on a line. Add additional lines if necessary. IMMEDIATE CAUSE (Final disease or condition resulting in death) → a. _____ Due to (or as a consequence of): Sequentially list conditions, if any, leading to the cause listed on line a. Enter the UNDERLYING CAUSE (disease or injury that initiated the events resulting in death) LAST b. _____ Due to (or as a consequence of): c. _____ Due to (or as a consequence of): d. _____					Approximate interval: Onset to death		
PART II. Enter other significant conditions contributing to death but not resulting in the underlying cause given in PART I.					33. WAS AN AUTOPSY PERFORMED? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		
34. WERE AUTOPSY FINDINGS AVAILABLE TO COMPLETE THE CAUSE OF DEATH? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No							
35. DID TOBACCO USE CONTRIBUTE TO DEATH? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> Probably <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown		36. IF FEMALE: <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant within past year <input type="checkbox"/> Pregnant at time of death <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant, but pregnant within 42 days of death <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant, but pregnant 43 days to 1 year before death <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown if pregnant within the past year		37. MANNER OF DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> Natural <input type="checkbox"/> Homicide <input type="checkbox"/> Accident <input type="checkbox"/> Pending Investigation <input type="checkbox"/> Suicide <input type="checkbox"/> Could not be determined			
38. DATE OF INJURY (Mo/Day/Yr) (Spell Month)	39. TIME OF INJURY	40. PLACE OF INJURY (e.g., Decedent's home; construction site; restaurant; wooded area)		41. INJURY AT WORK? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No			
42. LOCATION OF INJURY: State:		City or Town:		Apartment No.:			
Street & Number:		Zip Code:					
43. DESCRIBE HOW INJURY OCCURRED:					44. IF TRANSPORTATION INJURY, SPECIFY: <input type="checkbox"/> Driver/Operator <input type="checkbox"/> Passenger <input type="checkbox"/> Pedestrian <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify)		

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2003

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

### STANDARD DEATH CERTIFICATE

DRAFT 07/08/2002

U.S. STANDARD CERTIFICATE OF DEATH

LOCAL FILE NO.		STATE FILE NO.	
1. DECEDENT'S LEGAL NAME (Include AKA's if any) (First, Middle, Last)		2. SEX	3. SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER
4a. AGE-Last Birthday (Years)	4b. UNDER 1 YEAR Months: _____ Days: _____	4c. UNDER 1 DAY Hours: _____ Minutes: _____	5. DATE OF BIRTH (Mo/Day/Yr)
6. BIRTHPLACE (City and State or Foreign Country)		7a. RESIDENCE-STATE	
7b. COUNTY		7c. CITY OR TOWN	
7d. STREET AND NUMBER		7e. APT. NO.	7f. ZIP CODE
7g. INSIDE CITY LIMITS? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		10. SURVIVING SPOUSE'S NAME (If wife, give name prior to first marriage)	
8. EVER IN US ARMED FORCES? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	9. MARITAL STATUS AT TIME OF DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Married, but separated <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Never Married <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown	11. FATHER'S NAME (First, Middle, Last)	
12. MOTHER'S NAME PRIOR TO FIRST MARRIAGE (First, Middle, Last)		13a. INFORMANT'S NAME	
13b. RELATIONSHIP TO DECEDENT		13c. MAILING ADDRESS (Street and Number, City, State, Zip Code)	
14. PLACE OF DEATH (Check only one see instructions) <input type="checkbox"/> IF DEATH OCCURRED IN A HOSPITAL: <input type="checkbox"/> Inpatient <input type="checkbox"/> Emergency Room/Outpatient <input type="checkbox"/> Dead on Arrival <input type="checkbox"/> IF DEATH OCCURRED SOMEWHERE OTHER THAN A HOSPITAL: <input type="checkbox"/> Hospice facility <input type="checkbox"/> Nursing home/Long term care facility <input type="checkbox"/> Decedent's home <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify)		17. COUNTY OF DEATH	
16. FACILITY NAME (If not institution, give street & number)		18. PLACE OF DISPOSITION (Name of cemetery, crematory, other place)	
18. METHOD OF DISPOSITION: <input type="checkbox"/> Burial <input type="checkbox"/> Cremation <input type="checkbox"/> Donation <input type="checkbox"/> Entombment <input type="checkbox"/> Removal from State <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify): _____		20. LOCATION-CITY, TOWN, AND STATE	
21. NAME AND COMPLETE ADDRESS OF FUNERAL FACILITY		22. SIGNATURE OF FUNERAL SERVICE LICENSEE OR OTHER AGENT	
23. LICENSE NUMBER (Of Licensee)		24. DATE PRONOUNCED DEAD (Mo/Day/Yr)	
25. TIME PRONOUNCED DEAD		26. SIGNATURE OF PERSON PRONOUNCING DEATH (Only when applicable)	
27. LICENSE NUMBER		28. DATE SIGNED (Mo/Day/Yr)	
29. ACTUAL OR PRESUMED DATE OF DEATH (Mo/Day/Yr) (Spell Month)		30. ACTUAL OR PRESUMED TIME OF DEATH	
31. WAS MEDICAL EXAMINER OR CORONER CONTACTED? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		32. PART I. Enter the chain of events—disease, injuries, or complications—that directly caused the death. DO NOT enter terminal events such as cardiac arrest, respiratory arrest, or ventricular fibrillation without showing the etiology. DO NOT ABBREVIATE. Enter only one cause on a line. Add additional lines if necessary. IMMEDIATE CAUSE (Final disease or condition resulting in death) _____ Due to (or as a consequence of): _____ Sequentially list conditions, if any, leading to the disease listed on line a. Enter the UNDERLYING CAUSE (disease or injury that initiated the events resulting in death) LAST b. _____ Due to (or as a consequence of): _____ c. _____ Due to (or as a consequence of): _____ d. _____ Due to (or as a consequence of): _____	
33. WAS AN AUTOPSY PERFORMED? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		34. WERE AUTOPSY FINDINGS AVAILABLE TO COMPLETE THE CAUSE OF DEATH? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
35. DID TOBACCO USE CONTRIBUTE TO DEATH? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> Probably <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown		36. IF FEMALE: <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant within past year <input type="checkbox"/> Pregnant at time of death <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant, but pregnant within 42 days of death <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant, but pregnant 43 days to 1 year before death <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown if pregnant within the past year	
37. MANNER OF DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> Natural <input type="checkbox"/> Homicide <input type="checkbox"/> Accident <input type="checkbox"/> Pending Investigation <input type="checkbox"/> Suicide <input type="checkbox"/> Could not be determined		38. DATE OF INJURY (Mo/Day/Yr) (Spell Month)	
39. TIME OF INJURY		40. PLACE OF INJURY (e.g., Decedent's home, construction site, restaurant, wooded area)	
41. INJURY AT WORK? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		42. LOCATION OF INJURY: State: _____ City or Town: _____	
43. DESCRIBE HOW INJURY OCCURRED: Street & Number: _____ Apartment No.: _____ Zip Code: _____		44. IF TRANSPORTATION INJURY, SPECIFY: <input type="checkbox"/> Driver/Operator <input type="checkbox"/> Passenger <input type="checkbox"/> Pedestrian <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify)	
45. CERTIFIER (Check only one): <input type="checkbox"/> Certifying physician-To the best of my knowledge, death occurred due to the cause(s) and manner stated. <input type="checkbox"/> Pronouncing & Certifying physician-To the best of my knowledge, death occurred at the time, date, and place, and due to the cause(s) and manner stated. <input type="checkbox"/> Medical Examiner/Coroner-On the basis of examination, and/or investigation, in my opinion, death occurred at the time, date, and place, and due to the cause(s) and manner stated. Signature of certifier: _____			
46. NAME, ADDRESS, AND ZIP CODE OF PERSON COMPLETING CAUSE OF DEATH (Item 32)			
47. TITLE OF CERTIFIER		48. LICENSE NUMBER	
49. DATE CERTIFIED (Mo/Day/Yr)		50. FOR REGISTRAR ONLY: DATE FILED (Mo/Day/Yr)	
51. DECEDENT'S EDUCATION-Check the box that best describes the highest degree or level of school completed at the time of death: <input type="checkbox"/> 8th grade or less <input type="checkbox"/> 9th - 12th grade; no diploma <input type="checkbox"/> High school graduate or GED completed <input type="checkbox"/> Some college credit, but no degree <input type="checkbox"/> Associate degree (e.g., AA, AS) <input type="checkbox"/> Bachelor's degree (e.g., BA, AB, BS) <input type="checkbox"/> Master's degree (e.g., MA, MS, MEng, MEd, MSW, MBA) <input type="checkbox"/> Doctorate (e.g., PhD, EdD) or Professional degree (e.g., MD, DDS, DVM, LL.D.)		52. DECEDENT OF HISPANIC ORIGIN? Check the box that best describes whether the decedent is Spanish/Hispanic/Latino. Check the "No" box if decedent is not Spanish/Hispanic/Latino. <input type="checkbox"/> No, not Spanish/Hispanic/Latino <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, Mexican, Mexican American, Chicano <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, Puerto Rican <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, Cuban <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, other Spanish/Hispanic/Latino (Specify) _____	
53. DECEDENT'S RACE (Check one or more races to indicate what the decedent considered himself or herself to be) <input type="checkbox"/> White <input type="checkbox"/> Black or African American <input type="checkbox"/> American Indian or Alaska Native (Name of the enrolled or principal tribe) _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Asian Indian <input type="checkbox"/> Chinese <input type="checkbox"/> Filipino <input type="checkbox"/> Japanese <input type="checkbox"/> Korean <input type="checkbox"/> Vietnamese <input type="checkbox"/> Other Asian (Specify) _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Native Hawaiian <input type="checkbox"/> Guamanian or Chamorro <input type="checkbox"/> Samoan <input type="checkbox"/> Other Pacific Islander (Specify) _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify) _____			
54. DECEDENT'S USUAL OCCUPATION (Indicate type of work done during most of working life. DO NOT USE RETIRED).			
55. KIND OF BUSINESS/INDUSTRY			

NAME OF DECEDENT For use by physician or institution

To Be Completed/Verified By: FUNERAL DIRECTOR

To Be Completed By: MEDICAL CERTIFIER

To Be Completed By: FUNERAL DIRECTOR

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2003

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

---

In the following example, there are three causes reported. On line (c) the underlying cause is entered—congenital heart disease. Congenital heart disease gave rise to congestive heart failure (line (b)) which in turn led to a myocardial infarction (line (a)) -- the immediate cause of death.

- I (a) Myocardial infarction
- (b) Congestive heart failure
- (c) Congenital heart disease
- (d)
- II

As demonstrated by the following example, the certifier may not always list one cause per line:

- I (a) Myocardial infarction and pulmonary embolism with congestive heart failure
- (b)
- (c)
- (d)
- II

Likewise, the causes may not be reported in an acceptable sequence. In the following example, cancer is reported as due to diabetes.

- I (a) Cancer
- (b) Diabetes
- (c)
- (d)
- II

To date, the causes of the majority of cancers are still unknown so the causal relationship tables stored in the NCHS computers preclude the assumption that diabetes caused the cancer. Cancer is selected as the underlying cause of death from this certification for statistical purposes. However, the selection of the underlying cause of death is not relevant for this manual. For coding purposes, the order and position of each cause of death reported on the death certificate must be interpreted accurately so the computer software can then determine the correct underlying cause of death.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2003

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

---

There is an average of three causes listed per certificate. Approximately 20 percent have only one cause of death and 45 percent have three or more causes. Frequently, a cause will be reported on I(a) in Part I and a cause in Part II with no other reported causes. For other records, several causes may all be reported on a single line of the certificate or they may be entered on several lines in Part I. Rarely, the only cause(s) reported may be in Part II. Representative examples follow.

I (a) Pneumonia

(b)

(c)

(d)

II Diabetes

I (a) Cancer

(b)

(c)

(d)

II

I (a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

II Diabetes

I (a)

(b) Acute myocardial infarction

(c)

II Renal disease

I (a) AMI, renal disease, pulmonary embolism

A. Introduction

Code all information reported in the medical certification section of the death certificate and any other information pertaining to the medical certification, when reported elsewhere on the certificate. In Volumes 1 and 3 of ICD-10, the fourth-character subcategories of three-character categories are preceded by a decimal point. For coding purposes, omit the decimal point.

Enter codes in the same order and location as the entries they represent appear on the death certificate. Enter the codes for entries in Part II in the order the entries are reported, proceeding from the entry reported uppermost in Part II downward and from the left to right. If the uppermost line in Part II is an obvious continuation of a line below, enter the codes accordingly.

For instructions on placement of codes when the certifier states or implies a “due to” relationship between conditions not reported in sequential order, refer to Section II, Part C, Format. For instructions on placement of nature of injury (N-code) and external cause codes (E-codes), refer to Section V, Part B, Placement of Nature of Injury and External Cause Codes.

When an identical code applies to more than one condition reported on the same line, enter the code for the first-mentioned of these conditions only. When conditions classifiable to the same code are reported on different lines of the certificate, enter the code for each of the reported conditions. (This does not apply to external cause of morbidity and mortality (E-codes)).

1. Excessive Codes

- a. When a single line in Part I or Part II requires more than eight codes, delete the excessive codes (any over eight) for the line using the following criteria in the order listed:
  - (1) Delete ill-defined conditions (I469, I959, I99, J960, J969, P285, R00-R94, R96, R98) except when this code is the first code on a line, proceeding right to left.
  - (2) Delete nature of injury codes (S000-T983) except for the first one entered on a line, proceeding right to left.
  - (3) If, after applying the preceding criteria, any single line still has more than eight codes, delete beginning with the last code on the line until only 8 remain.

## Part A

## Introduction

- I (a) I460  
 (b) I219 I739  
 (c)  
 (d)  
 II &E109 I739 T811 &Y835 R18 R33 N19 C475 N359 I490 I493 J181

After deleting excessive codes:

- I (a) I460  
 (b) I219 I739  
 (c)  
 (d)  
 II &E109 I739 T811 &Y835 N19 C475 N359 I490

Delete (1) R33, (2) R18, (3) J181 and (4) I493

- b. When a single record requires more than 14 codes, delete the excessive codes using the following criteria in the order listed:
- (1) Delete ill-defined conditions (I469, I959, I99, J960, J969, P285, R00 - R94, R96, R98) except when this code is the first code on a line, beginning with the last code in Part II, proceeding right to left then upward right to left on each line (Part II, line e, line d, line c, line b, line a).
  - (2) Delete nature of injury codes (S000-T983) except for the first one entered on a line beginning with the last code in Part II, proceeding right to left then upward right to left on each line (Part II, line e, line d, line c, line b, line a).
  - (3) Delete repetitive codes except when it is the first code on a line beginning with the last code in Part II, proceeding right to left then upward right to left on each line (Part II, line e, line d, line c, line b, line a).
  - (4) If after applying the preceding criteria, any record still has more than 14 codes, delete beginning with the last code in Part II, proceeding upward right to left on each line (Part II, line e, line d, line c, line b, line a).

- I (a) C80 I460 R570  
 (b) R098 R53  
 (c) R54 F09 F03  
 (d) I709 I635  
 II I119 C473 R200 I258 I251 D539 R798 I635

After deleting excessive codes:

- I (a) C80 I460
- (b) R098
- (c) R54 F09 F03
- (d) I709 I635
- II I119 C473 I258 I251 D539 I635

Delete (1) R798, (2) R200, (3) R53 and (4) R570

## 2. Created Codes

To facilitate automated data processing, the following ICD-10 codes have been amended for use in coding and processing the multiple cause data. Special five character subcategories are for use in coding and processing the multiple cause data; however, they will not appear in official tabulations.

- A169 Respiratory tuberculosis, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed in ICD-10 to A169 not qualified as respiratory or pulmonary (A1690)  
 \*A1690 Tuberculosis NOS  
**Includes:** Any term indexed in ICD-10 to A169 not qualified as respiratory or pulmonary
- E039 Hypothyroidism, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to E039 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (E0390)  
 \*E0390 Advanced hypothyroidism  
 Grave hypothyroidism  
 Severe hypothyroidism  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to E039 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier
- G122 Motor neuron disease  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to G122 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (G1220)  
 \*G1220 Advanced motor neuron disease  
 Grave motor neuron disease  
 Severe motor neuron disease  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to G122 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier

## Part A

## Introduction

- 
- G20 Parkinson's disease  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to G20 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (G2000)  
 \*G2000 Advanced Parkinson's disease  
 Grave Parkinson's disease  
 Severe Parkinson's disease  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to G20 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier
- G309 Alzheimer's disease, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to G309 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (G3090)  
 \*G3090 Advanced Alzheimer's disease  
 Grave Alzheimer's disease  
 Severe Alzheimer's disease  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to G309 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier
- G35 Multiple sclerosis  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to G35 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (G3500)  
 \*G3500 Advanced multiple sclerosis  
 Grave multiple sclerosis  
 Severe multiple sclerosis  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to G35 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier
- I420 Dilated cardiomyopathy  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I420 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4200)  
 \*I4200 Familial dilated cardiomyopathy  
 Idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy  
 Primary dilated cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I420 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I421 Obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I421 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4210)  
 \*I4210 Familial obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
 Idiopathic obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
 Primary obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I421 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary

- 
- I422 Other hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I422 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4220)  
 \*I4220 Familial other hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
 Idiopathic other hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
 Primary other hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I422 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I425 Other restrictive cardiomyopathy  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I425 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4250)  
 \*I4250 Familial other restrictive cardiomyopathy  
 Idiopathic other restrictive cardiomyopathy  
 Primary other restrictive cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I425 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I428 Other cardiomyopathies  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I428 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4280)  
 \*I4280 Familial other cardiomyopathies  
 Idiopathic other cardiomyopathies  
 Primary other cardiomyopathies  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I428 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I429 Cardiomyopathy, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I429 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4290)  
 \*I4290 Familial cardiomyopathy  
 Idiopathic cardiomyopathy  
 Primary cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I429 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I500 Congestive heart failure  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I500 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (I5000)  
 \*I5000 Advanced congestive heart failure  
 Grave congestive heart failure  
 Severe congestive heart failure  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I500 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier

- 
- I514 Myocarditis, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed in ICD-10 to I514 qualified as arteriosclerotic (I5140)  
 \*I5140 Arteriosclerotic myocarditis  
**Includes:** Any term indexed in ICD-10 to I514 qualified as arteriosclerotic
- I515 Myocardial degeneration  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed in ICD-10 to I515 qualified as arteriosclerotic (I5150)  
 \*I5150 Arteriosclerotic myocardial degeneration  
**Includes:** Any term indexed in ICD-10 to I515 qualified as arteriosclerotic
- I600 Subarachnoid hemorrhage from carotid siphon and bifurcation  
**Excludes:** Ruptured carotid aneurysm (into brain) (I6000)  
 \*I6000 Ruptured carotid aneurysm (into brain)
- I606 Subarachnoid hemorrhage from other intracranial arteries  
**Excludes:** Ruptured aneurysm (congenital) circle of Willis (I6060)  
 \*I6060 Ruptured aneurysm (congenital) circle of Willis
- I607 Subarachnoid hemorrhage from intracranial artery, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Ruptured berry aneurysm (congenital) brain (I6070)  
 Ruptured miliary aneurysm (I6070)  
 \*I6070 Ruptured berry aneurysm (congenital) brain  
 Ruptured miliary aneurysm
- I608 Other subarachnoid hemorrhage  
**Excludes:** Ruptured aneurysm brain meninges (I6080)  
 Ruptured arteriovenous aneurysm (congenital) brain (I6080)  
 Ruptured (congenital) arteriovenous aneurysm cavernous sinus (I6080)  
 \*I6080 Ruptured aneurysm brain meninges  
 Ruptured arteriovenous aneurysm (congenital) brain  
 Ruptured (congenital) arteriovenous aneurysm cavernous sinus
- I609 Subarachnoid hemorrhage, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Ruptured arteriosclerotic cerebral aneurysm (I6090)  
 Ruptured (congenital) cerebral aneurysm NOS (I6090)  
 Ruptured mycotic aneurysm brain (I6090)  
 \*I6090 Ruptured arteriosclerotic cerebral aneurysm  
 Ruptured (congenital) cerebral aneurysm NOS  
 Ruptured mycotic aneurysm brain

## Part A

## Introduction

- 
- J101 Influenza with other respiratory manifestations, influenza virus identified  
**Excludes:** Influenza, flu, grippe (viral), influenza virus identified (without specified manifestations) (J1010)  
 \*J1010 Influenza, flu, grippe (viral), influenza virus identified (without specified manifestations)
- J111 Influenza with other respiratory manifestations, virus not identified  
**Excludes:** Influenza, flu, grippe (viral), influenza virus not identified (without specified manifestations) (J1110)  
 \*J1110 Influenza, flu, grippe (viral), influenza virus not identified (without specified manifestations)
- J841 Other interstitial pulmonary diseases with fibrosis  
**Excludes:** Chronic pneumonia, not elsewhere classified (J8410)  
 \*J8410 Chronic pneumonia, not elsewhere classified
- J849 Interstitial pulmonary disease, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Interstitial pneumonia, not elsewhere classified (J8490)  
 \*J8490 Interstitial pneumonia, not elsewhere classified
- J984 Other disorders of lung  
**Excludes:** Lung disease (acute) (chronic) NOS (J9840)  
 \*J9840 Lung disease (acute) (chronic) NOS
- K319 Disease of stomach and duodenum, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Disease, stomach NOS (K3190)  
 Lesion, stomach NOS (K3190)  
 \*K3190 Disease, stomach NOS  
 Lesion, stomach NOS
- K550 Acute vascular disorders of intestine  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed in ICD-10 to K550 qualified as embolic (K5500)  
 \*K5500 Acute embolic vascular disorders of intestine  
**Includes:** Any term indexed in ICD-10 to K550 qualified as embolic
- K631 Perforation of intestine (nontraumatic)  
**Excludes:** Intestinal penetration, unspecified part (K6310)  
 Intestinal perforation, unspecified part (K6310)  
 Intestinal rupture, unspecified part (K6310)  
 \*K6310 Intestinal penetration, unspecified part  
 Intestinal perforation, unspecified part  
 Intestinal rupture, unspecified part

## Part A

## Introduction

- 
- K720 Acute and subacute hepatic failure  
**Excludes:** Acute hepatic failure (K7200)  
\*K7200 Acute hepatic failure
- K721 Chronic hepatic failure  
**Excludes:** Chronic hepatic failure (K7210)  
\*K7210 Chronic hepatic failure
- K729 Hepatic failure, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Hepatic failure (K7290)  
\*K7290 Hepatic failure
- M199 Arthrosis, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to M199 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (M1990)  
\*M1990 Advanced arthrosis  
Grave arthrosis  
Severe arthrosis  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to M199 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier
- Q278 Other specified congenital malformations of peripheral vascular system  
**Excludes:** Congenital aneurysm (peripheral) (Q2780)  
\*Q2780 Congenital aneurysm (peripheral)
- Q282 Arteriovenous malformation of cerebral vessels  
**Excludes:** Congenital arteriovenous cerebral aneurysm (nonruptured) (Q2820)  
\*Q2820 Congenital arteriovenous cerebral aneurysm (nonruptured)
- Q283 Other malformations of cerebral vessels  
**Excludes:** Congenital cerebral aneurysm (nonruptured) (Q2830)  
\*Q2830 Congenital cerebral aneurysm (nonruptured)
- R58 Hemorrhage, not elsewhere classified  
**Excludes:** Hemorrhage of unspecified site (R5800)  
\*R5800 Hemorrhage of unspecified site
- R99 Other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality  
**Excludes:** Cause unknown (R97)  
\*R97 Cause unknown

3. “Dagger and asterisk” codes

ICD-10 provides for the classification of certain diagnostic statements according to two different axes—etiology or underlying disease process and manifestation or complication. Thus, there are two codes for diagnostic statements subject to dual classification. The etiology or underlying disease codes are marked with a dagger (†) and the manifestations or complication codes are marked with an asterisk (\*) following the code. The terms classified to codes with an asterisk are to be coded to the dagger code for the term only. These codes will not appear in official tabulations on multiple cause data.

I (a) Salmonella meningitis A022

Use only the dagger code for multiple cause-of-death coding.

Do not use the following ICD-10 codes for multiple cause coding:

D63*	H03*	I68*	M36*
D77*	H06*	I79*	M49*
E35*	H13*	I98*	M63*
E90*	H19*	J17*	M68*
F00*	H22*	J91*	M73*
F02*	H28*	J99*	M82*
G01*	H32*	K23*	M90*
G02*	H36*	K67*	N08*
G05*	H42*	K77*	N16*
G07*	H45*	K87*	N22*
G13*	H48*	K93*	N29*
G22*	H58*	L14*	N33*
G26*	H62*	L45*	N37*
G32*	H67*	L54*	N51*
G46*	H75*	L62*	N74*
G53*	H82*	L86*	P75*
G55*	H94*	L99*	
G59*	I32*	M01*	
G63*	I39*	M03*	
G73*	I41*	M07*	
G94*	I43*	M09*	
G99*	I52*	M14*	



## Part B

## General Coding Concept

I (a) Allergic vasculitis D690

This condition is indexed as one-term entity under “vasculitis.”

I (a) Cerebral arteriosclerosis I672

This condition is indexed as one-term entity.

- (1) A diagnostic term that contains one of the following adjectival modifiers indicates the condition modified has undergone certain changes and is considered to be a one-term entity.

adenomatous	hypoxemic
anoxic	hypoxic
congestive	inflammatory
cystic	ischemic
embolic	necrotic
erosive	obstructed, obstructive
gangrenous	ruptured
hemorrhagic	

(These instructions apply to these adjectival modifiers **only**).

For code assignment, apply the following criteria in the order stated.

- (a) If the modifier and lead term are indexed together, code as indexed.

I (a) Embolic nephritis N058

The adjectival modifier “embolic” is indexed under nephritis.

- (b) If the modifier is not indexed under the lead term, but “specified” is, use the code for specified (usually .8).

I (a) Obstructive cystitis N308

The adjective modifier “obstructive” is not indexed under cystitis.  
Code cystitis, specified NEC.

- (c) If neither the modifier nor “specified” is indexed under the lead term, refer to Volume 1 under the NOS code for the lead term and look for a specified 4<sup>th</sup> character subcategory.

I (a) Hemorrhagic cardiomyopathy I428

Code hemorrhagic cardiomyopathy to I428, Other cardiomyopathies. “Hemorrhagic” is not indexed under cardiomyopathy, neither is Cardiomyopathy, specified NEC indexed. The Classification does provide a code, I428, for “Other cardiomyopathies” in Volume 1.

- (d) If neither (a), (b), or (c) apply, code the lead term without the modifier.

I (a) Adenomatous bronchiectasis J47

“Adenomatous” is not an index term qualifying bronchiectasis. Code bronchiectasis only, since there is no provision in the Classification for coding “other bronchiectasis.”

**Exception:**

When a physical condition is reported as an adjective modifying a mental disorder for which the Classification provides a single code classifiable to F01-F09, disregard the indexing of these conditions and code as separate one-term entities. **This instruction does not apply when senile modifies a mental disorder.**

I (a) Arteriosclerotic dementia I709 F03

Code as separate one-term entities. Disregard the Index since the single code is classifiable to F01-F09.

I (a) Senile dementia F03

Code senile dementia as indexed since this instruction does not apply when senile modifies a mental disorder.

b. Multiple one-term entity

A multiple one-term entity is a diagnostic entity consisting of two or more contiguous words on a line for which the Classification does not provide a single code for the entire entity but does provide a single code for each of the components of the diagnostic entity. Consider as a multiple one-term entity if each of the components can be considered as separate one-term entities, i.e., they can stand alone as separate diagnosis. Code each component of the multiple one-term entity as indexed and on the same line where reported.

I (a) Myocardial infarction	I219
(b) Uremic acidosis	N19 E872
(c) Chronic nephritis	N039

“Uremic acidosis” is not indexed as a one-term entity. Code “uremia” and “acidosis” as separate one-term entities, each of which can stand alone as a diagnosis.

I (a) Uremia	N19
(b) Diabetic heart disease	E149 I519
(c)	

“Diabetic heart disease” is not indexed as a one-term entity. Code “diabetic” and “heart disease” as separate one-term entities, each of which can stand alone as a diagnosis.

I (a) Senile cardiovascular disease, MI	R54 I516 I219
(b)	
(c)	

“Senile cardiovascular disease.” is not indexed as a one-term entity. Code “senile” and “cardiovascular disease” as separate one-term entities each of which can stand alone as a diagnosis.

**Exception:**

When any condition classifiable to I20-I25, except I250, or I60-I69 is qualified as “hypertensive,” code to I20-I25 or I60-I69 **only**.

I (a) Hypertensive arteriosclerotic cerebrovascular disease	I672
I (a) Hypertensive myocardial ischemia	I259

- (1) Code an adjective reported at the end of a diagnostic entity as if it preceded the entity. This applies whether reported in Part I or II.

I	(a)	Arteriosclerosis, hypertensive	I10	I709
	(b)			
	(c)			

The complete term is not indexed as a one-term entity. “Hypertensive” is an adjectival modifier; code as if it preceded the arteriosclerosis.

I	(a)	MI	I219	
	(b)			
	(c)			
II		Coronary occlusion, arteriosclerotic	I709	I219

“Coronary occlusion, arteriosclerotic” is not indexed as a one-term entity. Arteriosclerotic is an adjectival modifier; code as if it preceded the coronary occlusion.

- (2) When a multiple one-term entity indicates a condition involving different sites or systems for which the Classification provides different codes, code the condition of each site or system separately. Where there is provision for coding the condition of one or more but not all of the sites or systems, code the conditions of the site(s) or system(s) that are indexed. Disregard the site(s) or system(s) for which the Classification does not provide a code.

I	(a)	Cardiac, respiratory, hepatic, renal failure	I509	J969	K7290	N19
---	-----	--	------	------	-------	-----

Code each site separately since the Classification provides a different code for each site.

I	(a)	Cerebro-hepatic failure	K7290
---	-----	-------------------------	-------

“Hepatic failure” is the only term indexed. Do not enter a code for “cerebral failure.”

I	(a)	Cardiopulmonary dysfunction	I518
	(b)		

“Cardiac dysfunction” is the only term indexed. Do not enter a code for “pulmonary dysfunction.”

c. Adjectival modifier reported with multiple conditions

- (1) If an adjectival modifier is reported with more than one condition, modify only the first condition.

I (a)	Arteriosclerotic cardiomyopathy and nephritis	I251	N059
-------	--	------	------

I (a)	Diabetic coma and gangrene	E140	R02
-------	----------------------------	------	-----

- (2) If an adjectival modifier is reported with one condition and more than one site is reported, modify all sites.

I (a)	Diabetic gangrene of hands and feet	E145	
-------	-------------------------------------	------	--

I (a)	Arteriosclerotic cardiovascular and cerebrovascular disease	I250	I672
-------	--	------	------

- (3) When an adjectival modifier precedes two different diseases that are reported with a connecting term, modify only the first disease.

I (a)	Arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease and cerebrovascular disease	I250	I679
-------	--	------	------

2. Parenthetical entries

- a. When one medical entity is reported, followed by another complete medical entity enclosed in parenthesis, disregard the parenthesis and enter as separate terms.

I (a)	Heart dropsy	I500	
	(b) Renal failure (CVRD)	N19	I139

Code each medical entity as indexed.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Pneumonia (aspiration)	J189	T179	&W80
9				

Code each medical entity as indexed.

- b. When the adjectival form of words or qualifiers are reported in parenthesis, use these adjectives to modify the term preceding it.

I (a)	Collapse of heart	I509
(b)	Heart disease (rheumatic)	I099
(c)		

Use the adjective to modify the term and code rheumatic heart disease.

- c. If the term in parenthesis is not a complete term and is not a modifier, consider as part of the preceding term.

I (a)	Metastatic carcinoma (ovarian)	C56
-------	--------------------------------	-----

Consider the site as part of the preceding term and code metastatic ovarian carcinoma.

I (a)	Drug dependence (heroin) (cocaine)	F112	F142
-------	------------------------------------	------	------

Consider the specified drugs as part of the preceding term and code heroin and cocaine dependence.

### 3. Special diagnostic entities

- a. When a condition is qualified as “HIV-related,” “AIDS-related,” or is modified by “AIDS,” or “HIV,” disregard the indexing of these conditions and code as separate one-term entities.

I (a)	HIV-related encephalopathy	B24	G934
-------	----------------------------	-----	------

I (a)	AIDS-related tuberculosis	B24	A1690
-------	---------------------------	-----	-------

I (a)	AIDS encephalopathy	B24	G934
-------	---------------------	-----	------

I (a)	HIV encephalopathy	B24	G934
-------	--------------------	-----	------

- b. Alzheimer’s dementia: Consider the following terms as one term entities and code as indicated:

When reported as:

Code

Endstage Alzheimer’s, senile dementia	}	G301
Senile dementia, Alzheimer’s		
Senile dementia, Alzheimer’s type		
Senile dementia of the Alzheimer’s		

When reported as:

Alzheimer’s, dementia	}	G309
Alzheimer’s; dementia		
Dementia Alzheimer’s		
Dementia, Alzheimer’s		
Dementia-Alzheimer’s		
Dementia, Alzheimer’s type		
Dementia of Alzheimer’s		
Dementia-Alzheimer’s type		
Dementia; Alzheimer’s type		
Dementia, probable Alzheimer’s		
Dementia syndrome, Alzheimer’s type		
Endstage dementia (Alzheimer’s)		

4. Plural form of disease

Do not use the plural form of a disease or the plural form of a site to indicate multiple.

- |                        |      |
|------------------------|------|
| I (a) Cardiac arrest   | I469 |
| (b) Congenital defects | Q899 |

Code I(b) Q899 (congenital defect); do not code as multiple (Q897).

5. Implied “disease”

When an adjectival form of a word, including one relating to a site or organ, is entered as a separate diagnosis, i.e., it is not part of an entry preceding or following it, assume the word “disease” after the adjective and code accordingly.

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Myocardial	I515

Code I(b) to I515, myocardial disease.

I (a) Coronary	I251
(b) Hypertension	I10

Code I(a) to I251, coronary disease. Coronary hypertension is not indexed.

C. Format1. “Due to” relationships involving more than **four** causally related conditions

**Four** lines, (a), (b), (c), **and (d)** have been provided in Part I of the death certificate for reporting conditions involved in the sequence of events leading directly to death and for indicating the causal relationship of the reported conditions. In cases where the decedent had more than four causally related conditions leading to death, certifiers have been instructed to report all of these conditions and to add line, (e), to indicate the relationship of the conditions. In the ACME system, provision has been made for identifying conditions reported on the additional “due to” line in Part I. Code conditions reported on line (e) or in equivalent “due to” positions as having been reported on separate lines. (Refer to Section II, Part I, 2, Reject code 9 – More than four “due to” statements, for instructions for coding certificates with conditions reported on more than **five** “due to” lines.)

I (a)	Shock due to pneumonia	R579
(b)	Rupture of esophageal varices	J189
(c)	Cirrhosis of liver due to alcoholism	I859
(d)		K746
(e)		F102

2. Connecting termsa. “Due to” written in or implied

When the certifier has stated that one condition was due to another or has used another connecting term that implies a due to relationship between conditions in Part I, enter the codes as though the conditions had been reported, one due to the other, on separate lines. Code the conditions on each of the remaining lines in Part I, if there are any, as though they had been reported on the succeeding line. (Refer to Section II, Part I, 2, Reject code 9 – More than four “due to” statements for instructions for coding certificates with more than four “due to” statements).

I (a)	Myocardial infarction as a result of	I219
(b)	ASHD	I251

Interpret “as a result of” as “due to” and code the ASHD on I(b).

I (a)	Stomach hemorrhage from gastric ulcer	K922
(b)	Cholecystitis	K259
(c)		K819

Because of the implied “due to,” code the gastric ulcer on I(b) and the cholecystitis on I(c).

- (1) The following connecting terms should be interpreted as meaning “due to” or “as a consequence of” when the entity immediately preceding and following these terms is a disease condition, nature of injury, or an external cause.

after	occurred after
arising in or during	occurred during
as (a) complication of	occurred in
as a result of	occurred when
because of	occurred while
caused by	origin
complication(s) of	received from
during	received in
etiology	resulting from
following	resulting when
for	secondary to (2°)
from	subsequent to
in	sustained as
incident to	sustained by
incurred after	sustained during
incurred during	sustained in
incurred in	sustained when
incurred when	sustained while
induced by	

I (a) Myocardial infarction	I219
(b) Nephritis due to arteriosclerosis	N059
(c) Hypertension from toxic goiter	I709
(d)	I10
(e)	E050

Both “due to” and “from” indicate the conditions following these terms are moved to the next due to position.

I (a) Complication from diabetes	E149
----------------------------------	------

Since there is not a codable entry preceding the “due to” term, do not reformat diabetes.

## Part C

## Format

- (2) When one of the previous terms is the first entry in Part II, indicating that the following entry is a continuation of Part I, code in Part I in next due to position.

I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
(b) Cardiac arrest	I469
(c) Coronary occlusion	I219
(d)	I251
II due to ASHD	

Since Part II is indicated to be a continuation of Part I, code the ASHD on I(d).

- (3) Certain connecting terms imply that the condition following the connecting term was “due to” the condition preceding it. In such cases, enter the code for the condition following the connecting term on the line above that for the condition that preceded it.

Interpret the following connecting terms as meaning that the condition following the term was due to the condition that preceded it:

as a cause of	led to
cause of	manifested by
caused	producing
causing	resulted in
followed by	resulting in
induced	underlying
leading to	with resultant
	with resulting

I (a) Myocardial infarction	I469
(b) followed by cardiac arrest	I219
(c)	

Code the cardiac arrest on I(a) since “followed by” indicates it was due to the myocardial infarction.

I (a) Respiratory arrest	R092
(b) Pulmonary edema	J81
(c) Bronchitis with resulting pneumonia	J189 I469
(d) and cardiac arrest	J40

Code the pneumonia and cardiac arrest on I(c) since “with resulting” indicates they were due to the bronchitis.

b. Not indicating a “due to” relationship

When conditions are separated by “and” or by another connecting term that does not imply a “due to” relationship, enter the codes for these conditions on the same line in the order that the conditions are reported on the certificate.

The following terms imply that conditions are meant to remain on the same line. They are separated by “and” or by another connecting term that does not **imply** a “due to” relationship:

and	consistent with
accompanied by	with ( $\bar{c}$ )
also	precipitated by
complicated by	predisposing (to)
complicating	superimposed on

I (a) Acute bronchitis superimposed on	J209	J439
(b) Emphysema		
(c) Tobacco abuse (smokes 3 packs a day)	F171	F179

Interpret “superimposed on” as “and.” Enter the code for the condition on I(b) as the second code on I(a). Do not enter a code on I(b).

I (a) MI	I219
(b) ASHD	I251
(c) Hypertension	I10
(d) Diabetes	E149 E142
II also diabetic nephropathy	

Consider “also” as a connecting word that does not imply “due to” and code Part II as a continuation of I(d).

3. Condition entered above line I(a)

When a condition is reported on the certificate above line I(a), enter the code for this condition on I(a). Code the condition(s) entered on line I(a) on line I(b); then code the conditions entered on each of the remaining line(s) in Part I as though they had been reported on the succeeding lines.

## Part C

## Format

Myocardial infarction

- |                              |      |
|------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Pulmonary embolism     | I219 |
| (b) Congestive heart failure | I269 |
| (c) Congenital heart disease | I500 |
| (d)                          | Q249 |

Code the condition entered above I(a) on I(a), then code the condition entered on I(a) on I(b); then code the conditions entered on each of the remaining line(s) in Part I as though they had been reported on the succeeding lines.

4. Condition reported between lines in Part I

When a condition is reported between I(a) and I(b) or I(b) and I(c) or I(c) and I(d), without a connecting term, enter the code for this condition on the following “due to” line. Code the conditions entered on each of the remaining line(s) in Part I as though they had been reported on the succeeding line.

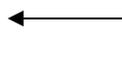
- |                    |      |
|--------------------|------|
| I (a) Pneumonia    | J189 |
| Bronchitis         |      |
| (b) Emphysema      | J40  |
| (c) Cancer of lung | J439 |
| (d)                | C349 |

Code the condition reported between lines I(a) and I(b) in the next “due to” position, and move the codes for conditions reported on lines I(b) and I(c) downward.

When a condition is reported between I(a) and I(b) or I(b) and I(c) or I(c) and I(d) with a connecting word, consider as a continuation of the line above and code accordingly unless there is a definite indication that it is a continuation of the line below.

- |                               |      |     |
|-------------------------------|------|-----|
| I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage     | I619 | I64 |
| ̄ CVA                         |      |     |
| (b) Cerebral arteriosclerosis | I672 |     |

Code the condition entered between I(a) and I(b) as a continuation of I(a).

- |                               |      |     |
|-------------------------------|------|-----|
| I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage     | I619 |     |
| ̄ CVA                         |      |     |
| (b) Cerebral arteriosclerosis | I672 | I64 |
- 

Since the certifier indicated by an arrow that the condition entered between I(a) and I(b) was a continuation of I(b), code the CVA on I(b).

## Part C

## Format

I (a)	Cerebrovascular accident due to cerebral hemorrhage	I64
(b)	Cerebral arteriosclerosis	I619
(c)		I672

Consider the condition entered between I(a) and I(b) as a continuation of I(a) and code accordingly.

5. Condition reported as due to I(a), I(b), or I(c)

When a condition(s) in Part I is reported with a specific statement interpreted or stated as “due to” another on lines I(a), I(b), I(c), or I(d), rearrange the codes according to the certifier’s statement. **Do not apply** this instruction to such statements reported in Part II.

I (a)	Myocardial failure	I249
(b)	Pneumonia	I509
(c)	Myocardial ischemia	J189
	due to (a)                      3wks	

Accept the certifier’s statement that the condition reported on I(c) is “due to” the condition on I(a). Move the codes for conditions reported on I(a) and I(b) downward. (Apply the duration on I(c) to the myocardial ischemia).

I (a)	Heart failure	I509	N19
(b)	Pneumonia	J189	
(c)	Uremia due to (b)		

Take into account the certifier’s statement on I(c) and code the condition reported on I(c) as the second entry on I(a).

I (a)	Carcinomatosis	I469
(b)	Cancer of lung	C80
(c)	Cardiorespiratory arrest due to above	C349

Take into account the certifier’s statement and code the cardiorespiratory arrest on I(a), then move the codes for the remaining conditions downward.

I (a)	Coronary thrombosis	I219
(b)	Chronic nephritis	N039
(c)	Arteriosclerosis	I709
II	Uremia caused by above	N19

Disregard the certifier’s statement, “caused by above,” reported in Part II.

6. Conditions reported in Part II

Enter the codes for entries in Part II in the order the entries are reported, proceeding from the entry reported uppermost in Part II downward and from left to right, if there is more than one entry on the same line. If the conditions are numbered, code in numerical order.

I (a) MI	I219			
(b) ASHD	I251			
(c) Pneumonia				
II Heart murmur, arteriosclerosis	J189	R011	I709	

7. Deletion of “due to” on the death certificate

When the certifier has indicated that conditions in Part I were not causally related by marking through items I(a), I(b), I(c), and /or I(d), or through the printed “due to, or as a consequence of” which appears below items I(a) – I(c) on the death certificate, proceed as follows:

- a. If the deletion(s) indicates that none of the conditions in Part I were causally related, consider as though all of the conditions had been reported on the uppermost used line. In determining the order of the codes, proceed from I(a) downward and from left to right if more than one condition is reported on a line.

I <del>(a)</del> Heart disease	I519	I10	N039	
<del>(b)</del> Malignant hypertension				
<del>(c)</del> Chronic nephritis				
II Cancer of kidney	C64			
I (a) Cardiac failure	I509	I251	J439	J40
<del>(b)</del> Arteriosclerotic heart disease				
<del>(c)</del> Emphysema and bronchitis				
(d)				

- b. If only item I(b), I(c), or I(d) or the printed “due to, or as a consequence of” which appears below lines I(a), I(b), or I(c) is marked through, consider the condition(s) reported on the crossed out line as though reported as the last entry (or entries) on the preceding line.

## Part C

## Format

I	(a) Diabetes (b) (e) BPH	E149	N40
I	(a) Cardiac arrest (b) Cirrhosis of liver (c) Alcoholism	I469	K746 F102
I	(a) Congestive failure (b) ASHD (c)	I500	I251
II	Pneumonia	J189	
I	(a) Heart block (b) Degenerative myocarditis (e) Cerebral hemorrhage	I459 I514	I619
II	Bronchopneumonia	J180	

- c. If only one part of the printed “due to, or as a consequence of” which appears below I(a), I(b), and I(c) is marked through, consider the condition(s) reported on that line as though reported as the last entry (or entries) on the preceding line.

I	(a) Cardiorespiratory failure Due to, or as a consequence of	R092	
	(b) Infarction of brain <del>Due to, or as a consequence of</del>	I639	I259
	(c) Ischemic heart disease Due to, or as a consequence of		

Code ischemic heart disease as though reported as second entry on I(b).

8. Deletion of “Part II” on death certificate

When the certifier has marked through the printed Part II, code the condition(s) reported in Part II as the last entry on the lowest used line in Part I.

I	(a) Apoplectic coma	I64	
	(b) Ruptured aneurysm, brain	I6090	
	(c) Arteriosclerosis	I709	
	(d) ESRD	N180	I10
II	and hypertension		

Since Part II is indicated to be a continuation of I(d), code hypertension as last entry on I(d).

## Part C

## Format

I	(a) Myocarditis	I514	I219	I500	I250	E149
	<del>(b)</del> M.I.					
	<del>(c)</del> CHF					
	<del>(d)</del> Cardiovascular arteriosclerosis					
H	Diabetes					
I	(a) M.I.		I219			
	(b) Uremia		N19			
	(c) Arteriosclerosis		I709			
	(d) Hypertension		I10	N059		
H	Nephritis					

9. Numbering of causes reported in Part I

- a. When the certifier has numbered all causes or lines in Part I, that is 1, 2, 3, etc., code these entries as if reported on the same line. This instruction applies whether or not the numbering extends into Part II, and it also applies whether or not the “due to” below lines I(a) and/or I(b) and/or I(c) are marked through.

I	(a)	1. Coronary thrombosis	I219	I250	I10	I709	N289	J1110
		(b) 2. ASCVD						
		(c) 3. Hypertension and arteriosclerosis						
		(d) 4. Renal disease						
II		5. Influenza						

Code all the entries on I(a).

- b. When part of the causes in Part I are numbered, make the interpretation for coding such entries on an individual basis.

I	(a)	1. Bronchopneumonia	J180	C169
		(b) 2. Cancer of stomach		
		(c) Chronic nephritis	N039	

Enter the codes for the conditions numbered “1” and “2” on I(a) in the order indicated by the certifier. Do not enter a code on I(b); however, enter the code for the condition on I(c) on that line.

I	(a)	Bronchopneumonia	J180
	(b)	1. Cancer of stomach	C169 N039
	(c)	2. Chronic nephritis	

Enter the codes for conditions numbered “1” and “2” on I(b) in the order indicated by the certifier. Do not enter a code on I(c).

## Part C

## Format

I	(a)	Congestive heart failure	I500		
	(b)	Influenza	J1110		
	(c)	1. Pulmonary emphysema	J439	J449	C349
	(d)	2. COPD			
II		3. Cancer of lung			

Enter the codes for the conditions numbered 1, 2, and 3 on I(c) in the order indicated by the certifier. Do not enter a code on I(d) or in Part II.

- c. When the causes in Part I are numbered, and an entry is stated or implied as “due to” another, enter the code(s) connected by the stated or implied “due to” in the next “due to” position, followed by the codes for the **remaining numbered** causes.

I	(a)	1. Bronchopneumonia due to	J180		
	(b)	influenza	J1110	J841	J40
	(c)	2. Pulmonary fibrosis 3. Bronchitis			

Enter the code for the condition followed by the stated “due to” on I(b), followed by codes for the conditions numbered “2” and “3.” Do not enter a code on I(c).

I	(a)	1. Pneumonia	J189		
	(b)	MI	I219	I251	
	(c)	2. ASHD			

Code the condition numbered “2” as a continuation of I(b). Leave I(c) blank.

10. Punctuation marks

- a. Disregard punctuation marks such as a period, comma, semicolon, colon, dash, slash, question mark, or exclamation mark when placed at the end of a line in Part I. Do not apply this instruction to a hyphen (-), which indicates a word is incomplete.

I	(a)	Myocardial infarct?	I219		
	(b)	Meningitis, mastoiditis	G039	H709	
	(c)	Otitis media	H669		

Disregard the punctuation marks and code the conditions reported on I(a), I(b), and I(c) as indicated by the certifier.

## Part C

## Format

I (a)	Chronic rheumatic	I099	I958
(b)	heart disease, chronic hypotension		
(c)	Cancer	C80	

Regard the conditions reported on I(b) as a continuation of I(a). Do not enter a code on I(b).

- b. When conditions are separated by a slash (/), code each condition as indexed.

I (a)	Cardiac arrest/respiratory arrest/pneumonia	I469	R092	J189
(b)	ASHD	I251		

Disregard the slash and code conditions as indexed.

11. Conditions in the duration box

- a. When a condition is entered in the duration block, code the condition on the same line where it is reported.

		<u>Duration</u>		
I (a)	Arteriosclerotic heart disease	CVA	I251	I64
(b)				
(c)				
II	Arteriosclerosis		I709	

Code the condition reported in the duration block as the last entry on I(a).

## Part D

## Doubtful Diagnosis

D. Doubtful diagnosis1. Doubtful qualifying expression

- a. When expressions such as “apparently,” “presumably,” “?”, “perhaps,” and “possibly,” qualify any condition, disregard these expressions and code condition as indexed.

I (a) ? hemorrhage of stomach	K922
(b) Possible ulcer of stomach	K259

Disregard “?” and code hemorrhage of stomach on I(a) as reported.  
Disregard “possible” and code ulcer of stomach on I(b) as reported.

I (a) Heart disease, probable ASHD	I519	I251
------------------------------------	------	------

Disregard “probable” and code heart disease and ASHD on I(a).

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Pneumonia, probably aspiration	J189	T179	&W80
-------------------	--------------------------------------	------	------	------

Disregard the “probably” and code both pneumonia and aspiration as indexed.

- b. When these expressions are reported at the end of a line in Part I, **do not** consider to be a continuation of the next lower line.

I (a) Heart disease probably	I519
(b) Acute myocardial infarction	I219

Disregard “probably” and code heart disease on I(a) and acute myocardial infarction on I(b).

I (a) Cardiovascular disease presumably	I516
(b) Cerebral thrombosis	I633

Disregard “presumably” and code each condition on the line where it is reported.

## Part D

## Doubtful Diagnosis

- c. When these expressions are reported at the beginning of a line in Part I, **do not** consider to be a continuation of the line above it.

I	(a) Heart disease	I519
	(b) Possibly acute myocardial infarction	I219

Disregard “possibly” and code each condition on the line where it is reported.

- d. When these expressions are reported at the beginning of Part II, **do not** consider to be a continuation of Part I.

I	(a) Heart disease probably	I519
	(b)	
	(c)	
II	Probably MI	I219

Disregard “probably” and code heart disease on I(a) and MI in Part II.

2. Interpretation of “either...or...”

Consider the following as a statement of “either or:”

- Two conditions reported on **one** line and **both** conditions qualified by expressions such as “apparently,” “presumably,” “?” “perhaps,” and “possibly”
- Two or more conditions connected by “or” or “versus”

Code using the following instructions:

- a. When a condition of more than one site is qualified by a statement of “either...or...” and both sites are classified to the **same system**, code the condition to the residual category for the **system**.

I	(a) Pneumonia	J189
	(b) Cancer of kidney or bladder	C689

Code I(b) C689, malignant neoplasm of other and unspecified urinary organs.

I	(a) Heart failure	I509
	(b) Coronary or pulmonary blood clot	I749

Code I(b) I749, blood clot.

## Part D

## Doubtful Diagnosis

- b. When a condition of more than one site is qualified by a statement of “either...or...” and these sites are in different systems, code to the residual category for the disease or condition specified.

I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
	(b) Carcinoma of gallbladder or kidney	C80

Code I(b) C80, malignant neoplasm without specification of site.

I	(a) Respiratory failure	J969
	(b) Congenital anomaly of heart or lungs	Q899

Code I(b) Q899, anomaly, congenital, unspecified.

- c. When conditions are qualified by a statement of “either...or...” and **only one site/system** is involved, code to the residual category for the site/system.

I	(a) Apparently stroke, perhaps heart attack	I99
---	---	-----

Since both conditions are preceded by a doubtful qualifying expression, consider as a statement of “either...or...” Stroke and heart attack are classified to the circulatory system. Code to disease, circulatory system, NEC.

I	(a) Pulmonary edema	J81
	(b) Tuberculosis or cancer of lung	J9840

Code I(b) J9840, lung disease NOS.

- d. When conditions are classified to the same three character category with different fourth characters, code to the three character category with fourth character “9.”

I	(a) ASCVD vs ASHD	I259
---	-------------------	------

Code I259 the residual category. ASCVD and ASHD are both classified to 125.-, chronic ischemic heart disease.

## Part D

## Doubtful Diagnosis

- e. When conditions are classified to different three character categories and Volume 1 provides a residual category for the diseases in general, code to that residual category.

I (a) MI vs coronary aneurysm I259

Code to I259 the residual category for ischemic heart disease. MI and coronary aneurysm are both classified as “ischemic heart diseases.”

- f. When conditions involving different systems are qualified by “either... or...,” and cannot be classified to the residual category for the disease, code R688, other specified general symptoms and signs.

I (a) Coma R402  
 (b) ? gallbladder colic ? coronary R688  
 thrombosis

Code I(b) R688, other ill-defined conditions. (Consider the two question marks on a single line as “either...or...”).

- g. When diseases and injuries are qualified by “either... or...,” code R99, other unknown and unspecified cause, provided this is the only entry on the certificate. When other classifiable entries are reported, omit R99.

I (a) Head injury or CVA R99

Code I(a) R99, other unknown and unspecified cause.

- h. For doubtful diagnosis in reference to “either... or...” **accidents**, **suicides**, and **homicides**, refer to Section V, Part A, External Cause Code Concept.

## Part E

Conditions Specified as “Healed” or “History of”

---

E. Conditions specified as “healed” or “history of”

The Classification provides sequela categories for certain conditions qualified as “healed.” or “history of.” Refer to Section IV, Part F, Sequela. When the Classification does not provide a code or a sequela category for a condition qualified as “healed” or “history of,” code the condition as though not qualified by this term.

I (a) Myocardial infarction	I219
(b)	
(c)	
II Gastritis, healed	K297

Code K297, gastritis NOS in Part II.

## Part F

Coding Entries Such as “Same,” “Ditto (” “As Above”

---

F. Coding entries such as “same,” “ditto (”,” “as above”

When the certifier enters “same,” “ditto mark (”,” “as above,” etc., in a “due to” position to a specified condition, do not enter a code for that line.

I	(a) Coronary occlusion	I219
	(b) Same	
	(c) Hypertension	I10

Do not enter a code on I(b) for the entry “same.”

I	(a) Pneumonia	J189
	(b) ”	
	(c) Emphysema	J439

Do not enter a code on I(b) for the “ ditto mark (”.”

Part G

Conditions Qualified by “Postmortem,” “Ruled Out” “R/O”

---

G. Condition qualified by “postmortem,” “rule out,” “ruled out,” “r/o”

When a conditions is qualified by “postmortem,” “rule out,” “ruled out,” or “r/o,” etc., **do not** enter a code for the condition.

H. Nonindexed and illegible entries1. Terms that are not indexed

When a term is reported that does not appear in the ICD-10 Index, refer the term to the supervisor.

2. Illegible entries

When an illegible entry is the **only** entry on the certificate, code R99. When an illegible entry is reported with other classifiable entries, disregard the illegible entry and code the remaining entries as indexed.

Part I

Coding One-Character Reject Codes

I. Coding one-character reject codes

When a death record qualifies for more than one reject code, code only one in this order: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 9.

1. Reject code 1-5-Inconsistent duration

When a duration of an entity in a “due to” position is shorter than that of an entity reported on a line above it and only **one** codable entity is reported on each of these lines, enter a reject code (1-5) in the appropriate data position. When more than one codable entity is reported on the same line, disregard the duration entered on that line. Use the appropriate reject code even though there are lines without a duration or with more than one codable entity between the entities with the inconsistent duration; in such cases, consider the inconsistency to be between the line immediately above and the line with the shorter duration.

If the inconsistent duration is between:

Lines	<u>Enter Reject Code</u>
I (a) and I (b).....	1
I (b) and I (c).....	2
I (c) and I (d).....	3
I (d) and I (e) .....	4
Inconsistent durations between more than two lines in Part I, or any situation where reject codes 1-4 would not be applicable .....	5

**Do not** enter a reject code if the only inconsistency is between the durations of malignant neoplasms classifiable to C00-C96.

I (a) ASHD	10 yrs.	I251
(b) Chronic nephritis and hypertension	5 yrs.	N039 I10
(c) Diabetes	5 yrs.	E149

Reject 2

Disregard the duration on I(b), since more than one codable entity is reported on this line. Only **one** codable entity is reported on lines I(a) and I(c) and the duration of the diabetes was shorter than that of ASHD. For the purposes of assigning the reject code, consider the duration on I(b) to be at least as long as the duration on I(a). Therefore, enter reject code 2 denoting an inconsistency between I(b) and I(c).

## Part I

## Coding One-Character Reject Codes

I (a) ASHD	5 yrs	I251	
(b) Chronic nephritis and hypertension	10 yrs	N039	I10
(c) Diabetes	5 yrs	E149	

**Do not** enter reject code 2. The duration on I(b) is disregarded. The duration of diabetes on I(c) was not shorter than that of ASHD on I(a).

I (a) Cardiac arrest		I469	
(b) Congestive heart failure	1 week	I500	
(c) Cancer of stomach	1 year	C169	
(d) Metastatic cancer of lung	6 months	C780	

**Do not** use reject code 3 since the inconsistent duration is between malignant neoplasms.

I (a) Basilar artery thrombosis	7 weeks	I630	
(b) Renal failure	4 weeks	N19	
(c) Pneumonia	1 week	J189	

Reject 5

Enter reject code 5 since the inconsistent durations are between more than 2 lines.

Age 1 yr.

I (a) Congenital nephrosis	life	N049	
(b)			
(c) Intestinal hemorrhage	1 day	K922	

Reject 5

Enter reject code 5 since reject codes 1-4 are not applicable.

## Part I

## Coding One-Character Reject Codes

2. Reject code 9 – More than four “due to” statements

When certifier’s entries or reformatting result in more than **four** statements of “due to,” continue the remaining codes horizontally on the **fifth** line and enter reject **code 9** in the appropriate position.

I (a)	Terminal pneumonia	J189
(b)	Congestive heart failure	I500
(c)	Myocardial infarction	I219
(d)	ASHD	I251
(e)	Generalized arteriosclerosis	I709 E039
(f)	Myxedema	

Reject 9

Enter the code for the myxedema reported on the fifth “due to” line, I(f), following the code for the condition reported on this line (generalized arteriosclerosis). Enter reject code 9 in the appropriate data position.

If there are more than four “due to” statements in Part I and there is no codable condition reported on one or more lines, consider the condition(s) on each subsequent “due to” line as though reported on the preceding line. Enter reject code 9 only if, after reformatting, there are codable conditions on more than five lines.

I (a)	Pneumonia	J182
(b)	Bedfast	G839
(c)	Paralysis following CVA	I64
(d)	Hypertension due to	I10
(e)	adrenal adenoma	D350

Do not enter reject code 9. Since bedfast is not a codable condition, enter the code for paralysis on I(b), the code for CVA on I(c), etc. As a result of the rearrangement of the conditions, there are codable conditions on only five lines.

When a death record qualifies for more than one reject, prefer a reject code for inconsistent durations over reject code 9.

## Part J

Inclusion of Additional Information (AI)  
to Mortality Source DocumentsJ. Inclusion of additional information (AI) to mortality source documents

Code supplemental information when it modifies or supplements data on the original mortality source document.

1. When additional information (AI) **states** the underlying cause of a **specified disease in Part I**, code the additional information (AI) in a “due to” position to the specified disease.

I	(a) Pulmonary edema	J81
	(b) Congestive heart failure	I500
	(c) Arteriosclerosis	I251
	(d)	I709

## II

AI The underlying cause of the congestive heart failure was ASHD.

Since the certifier **states** the underlying cause of the congestive heart failure is ASHD, code I251 on I(c) and move the condition on I(c) to the next “due to” position.

2. When additional information (AI) **modifies** a disease condition, use the AI and code the disease modified by the AI in the position **first** indicated by the certifier.

I	(a) Pneumonia	J181
	(b)	
	(c)	
	AI Lobar pneumonia	

Code lobar pneumonia as the **specified** type of pneumonia on I(a) only.

3. When there is a stated or implied complication of surgery and the additional information indicates the condition for which surgery was performed, code this condition in a “due to” position to the surgery when reported in Part I and following the surgery when reported in Part II. Precede this code with an ampersand (&).

I	(a) Coronary occlusion	T818
	(b) Gastrectomy	&Y836
	(c)	&K259
	AI Gastrectomy done for gastric ulcer.	

Code the condition necessitating the surgery on I(c) and precede this code with an ampersand.

**Part J** **Inclusion of Additional Information (AI)  
to Mortality Source Documents**

---

I (a)	Respiratory arrest	R092		
(b)	Septicemia	T814		
(c)				
II	Uremia, cholecystectomy	N19	&Y836	&K802
AI	Surgery for gallstones			

Code the condition necessitating the surgery following the E-code for surgery in Part II.

4. When additional information (AI) **states** a certain condition is the **underlying cause** of death, **code** this condition in Part I in a “due to” position (on a separate line) to the conditions reported on the original death record.

I (a)	Cardiac arrest	I469		
(b)	MI	I219		
(c)	ASHD	I251		
(d)		E149		
II				
AI	U.C. was diabetes			

Accept the certifier’s statement that the underlying cause of death was “diabetes,” and code this condition on I(d) in a “due to” position to the conditions originally reported in Part I.

5. When any morphological type of neoplasm is reported in Part I with no mention of a “site” and additional information specify a site, **code** the specified site **only** on the line where the morphological type is reported.

I (a)	Cancer	C349		
(b)				
(c)				
II				
AI	Cancer of lung			

Code only the specified cancer (lung) on I(a).

## Part J

Inclusion of Additional Information (AI)  
to Mortality Source Documents

6. When additional information states the primary site of a malignant neoplasm, code this condition in a “due to” position to the other malignant neoplasms reported in Part I.

I	(a) Metastatic neoplasm	C80
	(b) Metastasis to liver	C787
	(c)	C189

## II

AI Colon was primary site.

Code the stated primary site on I(c) in a “due to” position to the other neoplasms reported in Part I.

I	(a) Carcinomatosis	C80
	(b)	C61
	(c)	

## II

AI Prostate was probably the primary site.

Code the presumptive primary site (prostate) on I(b) in a “due to” position to the stated neoplasm reported on the original death certificate.

7. When the additional information **does not modify** a condition on the certificate, or **does not state** that this condition is the underlying cause, code the AI as the last condition(s) in Part II. Code AI reported on the certificate beginning with the uppermost downward and from left to right.

I	(a) Coronary thrombosis	I219
	(b) HASCVD	I119
	(c)	
II	Hypertension	I10 I709 I64 I252
	AI Arteriosclerosis, CVA, old MI	

The additional information does not modify conditions on the certificate. Code as the last entries in Part II.

	Male, 30 minutes-Twin B	
I	(a) Immature	P073
600 gm	(b)	
	(c)	
II	Atelectasis	P281 P015 P070

Code the additional information in the order reported, uppermost downward and from left to right.

K. Amended certificates

When an “amended certificate” is submitted, **code** the conditions reported on the amended certificate only.

## Part L

## Effects of Age of Decedent on Classification

L. Effect of age of decedent on classification

Always note the **age of the decedent** at the time the causes of death are being coded. Certain groups of categories are provided for certain age groups. There are several conditions within certain categories which cannot be properly classified unless the **age** is taken into consideration. Use the following terms to identify certain age groups:

1. NEWBORN OR NEONATAL means **less than 28 days** of age at the time of death. Code any index term with the indentation of “newborn,” “neonatal,” “perinatal,” “perinatal period,” “fetus or newborn,” or “fetal” ( in this priority order) to the newborn category if the decedent is less than 28 days of age or there is evidence the condition originated in the first 27 days of life, even though death may have occurred later.

Female, 4 hours

I (a) Anoxia		P219
(b) Cerebral hemorrhage		P524

Since the age of decedent is less than 28 days, code anoxia of newborn, and cerebral hemorrhage of newborn.

Male, 31 days

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Pulmonary hemorrhage	26 days	P269
(b)		

Since the condition originated in the first 27 days of life, code as a newborn.

2. INFANT or INFANTILE means **less than 1 year** of age at the time of death.

Male, 9 months

I (a) Pneumonia		J189
(b) Hemiplegia		G802

Since the decedent is less than 1 year of age at the time of death, code hemiplegia, infantile.

## Part L

## Effects of Age of Decedent on Classification

3. CHILD or CHILDHOOD means **less than 18 years of age** at the time of death.

Male, 11 years

I (a) Asthma J450

Code as asthma, childhood.

4. Congenital anomalies (Q00-Q99)

Regard the conditions listed below as congenital and code to the appropriate congenital category if death occurred within the age limitations stated, provided there is no indication that they were acquired after birth.

- a. Less than 28 days:

heart disease NOS  
hydrocephalus NOS

Male, 27 days

I (a) Renal failure N19  
(b) Hydrocephalus Q039

Code the hydrocephalus as congenital since the decedent was less than 28 days of age at the time of death.

- b. Less than 1 year:

aneurysm (aorta) (aortic)	cyst of brain
(brain) (cerebral) (circle of Willis) (coronary)	deformity
(peripheral) (racemose)	displacement of organ
(retina) (venous)	ectopia of organ
aortic stenosis	hypoplasia of organ
atresia	pulmonary stenosis
atrophy of brain	valvular heart disease (any valve)

Female, 3 months

I (a) Pneumonia J189  
(b) Cyst of brain Q046

Code cyst of brain as congenital since the age of the decedent is less than 1 year.

5. Congenital syphilis

Regard syphilis and conditions that are qualified as syphilitic as congenital and code to the appropriate congenital syphilis category if the decedent was less than two years of age.

Male, 16 mos

I (a)	Syphilitic pneumonia	A500
(b)		
(c)		

Code congenital syphilitic pneumonia since age is less than 2 years.

## Part L

## Effects of Age of Decedent on Classification

6. Age limitation

Some categories in ICD-10 are limited by provisions of the Classification to certain ages. Code the categories listed below only if the age at the time of death was as follows:

## a. Age 28 days or over

A32	E14	J13	N61
A35	E162	J14	R00
A40	E561	J15	R01
A41	E63	J16	R048
A56	E834	J18	R090
A74	E835	J43	R092
B30	F10	J80	R11
B370	F11	J849	R17
B371	F12	J96	R230
B372	F13	J981	R233
B373	F14	J982	R290
B374	F15	J984	R40
B375	F16	J988	R50
B376	F17	K27	R53
B377	F18	K56	R56
B378	F19	K631	R58
B379	G473	K65	R60
D65	G700	K92	R633
D751	I48	L01	R680
E05	I49	L10	R681
E10	I50	L50	
E11	I61	L530	
E12	I62	M34	
E13	J12	N390	

Male, age 25 days

I (a) Urinary tract infection P393  
(b)

Code urinary tract infection, newborn since age is less than 28 days.

## Part L

## Effects of Age of Decedent on Classification

Female, age 27 days

I (a) Respiratory failure	P285
(b)	
(c)	

Code respiratory failure, newborn since age is less than 28 days.

Female, age 28 days

I (a) Atelectasis	J981
(b)	
(c)	

Code atelectasis, J981 since age is reported as 28 days.

b. Age under 1 year:

R95

c. Age 1 year or over:

R960

Age 1 year

I (a) Sudden infant death syndrome	R960
------------------------------------	------

d. Age 5 years or over:

X60-X84

Age 4 years

<u>Place</u> I (a) GSW to head Suicide	S019 &W34
--	-----------

9

M. Sex limitations

Certain categories in ICD-10 are limited to one sex:

<u>For Males Only</u>	<u>For Females Only</u>
B260	A34
C60-C63	B373
D074-D076	C51-C58
D176	C796
D29.-	D06.-
D40.-	D070-D073
E29.-	D25-D28
E895	D39.-
F524	E28.-
I861	E894
L291	F525
N40-N50	F53.-
Q53-Q55	I863
Q98	L292
R86	L705
S312-S313	M800-M801
	M810-M811
	M830
	N70-N98
	N992-N993
	O00-O99
	P546
	Q50-Q52
	Q96
	Q97
	R87
	S314
	S374-S376
	T192-T193
	T833
	Y424
	Y425
	Y76.-

---

If the cause of death is inconsistent with the sex, code the cause of death to R99, other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality (R99).

Female, age 32

I (a) Cancer of prostate

R99

(b)

(c)

Code other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality (R99).

## Part N

## Effects of Duration on Assignment of Codes

N. Effect of duration on assignment of codes

Before assigning codes, take into account any statements entered on the certificate in the spaces for duration since these statements may affect the code assignments for certain conditions.

1. Qualifying conditions as acute or chronic

- a. Usually the duration should **not** be used to qualify the condition as “acute” or “chronic.”

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Nephritis	2 years	N059

Code nephritis as indexed. Do not use the duration to qualify the nephritis as chronic.

- b. However, when assigning codes to certain conditions classified as “ischemic heart diseases” the Classification provides the following specific guidelines for classifying a condition with a **stated** duration as acute or chronic:

- acute or with stated duration of 4 weeks or less
- chronic or with a stated duration of over 4 weeks

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Acute myocardial infarction	3 mos.	I258
(b)		
(c)		

Code Infarction, myocardium, chronic or with a stated duration of over 4 weeks, I258.

- (1) For the purpose of interpreting these instructions:

Consider these terms:	To mean:
brief days hours immediate instant minutes recent short sudden weeks (few) (several)	4 weeks or less or acute
longstanding 1 month	over 4 weeks or chronic

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Aneurysm heart	weeks	I219
(b)		
(c)		

Code Aneurysm, heart, acute or with a stated duration of 4 weeks or less, I219. “Weeks” is interpreted to mean 4 weeks or less.

- c. When the duration is stated to be “acute” or “chronic,” consider the condition to be specified as acute or chronic.

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Heart failure	1 hour	I509
(b) Bronchitis	acute	J209

Code “acute” bronchitis on I(b).

## 2. Subacute

In general, code a disease that is specified as subacute as though qualified as acute if there is provision in the Classification for coding the acute form of the disease but **not** for the subacute form.

I (a) Subacute pyelonephritis	N10
-------------------------------	-----

Code subacute pyelonephritis to N10, acute pyelonephritis since there is no code for subacute pyelonephritis.

3. Acute exacerbation

Code “acute exacerbation” of a chronic specified disease to the acute and chronic stage of the disease if the Classification provides separate codes for “acute” and “chronic.”

I (a)	Acute exacerbation of leukemia	C950	
(b)	Chronic lymphocytic leukemia	C911	
(c)			
I (a)	Acute exacerbation of chronic	C910	C911
(b)	lymphocytic leukemia		
(c)			
I (a)	Acute exacerbation of bronchitis	J209	
(b)			
(c)			
I (a)	Acute exacerbation of chronic	N10	N119
(b)	pyelonephritis		
(c)			
I (a)	Acute exacerbation of chronic	J209	J42
(b)	bronchitis		
(c)			
I (a)	Chronic leukemia with conversion to acute phase	C951	C950
(b)			
(c)			
I (a)	Acute exacerbation of chronic obstructive lung disease	J441	J449
(b)			
(c)			

Code the preceding examples to the acute and chronic stages of each specified disease since the Classification provides separate codes for the “acute” and “chronic.”

4. Acute and chronic

Sometimes the terms acute and chronic are reported preceding two or more diseases. In these cases, use the term (“acute” or “chronic”) with the condition it **immediately** precedes.

I (a)	Chronic renal and liver failure	N189	K7290
-------	---------------------------------	------	-------

Code renal failure, chronic and liver failure NOS.

## Part N

## Effects of Duration on Assignment of Codes

5. Qualifying conditions as congenital or acquired

Code conditions classified as congenital in the Classification as congenital, even when not specified as congenital if the interval between onset and death and the age of the decedent indicate that the condition existed from birth.

	<u>Duration</u>	
Female, age 2 years		
I (a) Pneumonia	1 week	J189
(b) Heart disease	2 years	Q249

Code the condition on I(b) as congenital since the age of the decedent and the duration of the condition indicate that the heart disease existed at birth.

Do not use the interval between onset and death to qualify conditions that are classified to categories Q00-Q99, congenital anomalies, as acquired.

	<u>Duration</u>	
Male, 62 years		
I (a) Renal failure	3 months	N19
(b) Pulmonary stenosis	5 years	Q256

**Do not** use the duration to qualify the pulmonary stenosis as acquired.

6. Two conditions with one duration

When two or more conditions are entered on the same line with one duration, disregard the duration and code the conditions as indexed.

	<u>Duration</u>		
I (a) Myocardial ischemia and congestive heart failure	3 weeks	I259	I500
(b) Hypertension	5 years	I10	

Disregard the duration on I(a) and code the myocardial ischemia as indexed.

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) MI due to nephritis	3 months	I219
(b) Arteriosclerosis		N059
(c)		I709

Disregard the duration on I(a) and code myocardial infarction as indexed.

## Part N

## Effects of Duration on Assignment of Codes

7. Conflict in durations

When conflicting durations are entered for a condition, give preference to the duration entered in the space for interval between onset and death.

		<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Ischemic heart disease	2 weeks	years	I259

Use the duration in the block to qualify the ischemic heart disease.

8. Span of dates

Interpret dates that are entered in the spaces for interval between onset and death separated by a slash (/), dash (-), etc., as meaning from the first date to the second date. Disregard such dates if they extend from one line to another and there is a condition reported on both of these lines since the span of dates could apply to either condition.

		<u>Duration</u>	
Date of death 10-6-98			
I (a) MI		10/1/98-	I219
(b) Ischemic heart disease		10/6/98	I259

Disregard duration and code each condition as indexed since the dates extend from (a) to (b).

		<u>Duration</u>	
Date of death 10-6-98			
I (a) Aneurysm of heart		10/1/98 – 10/6/98	I219
(b)			

Since there is only one condition reported, apply the duration to this condition.

		<u>Duration</u>	
Date of death 10-6-98			
I (a) Ischemic heart disease		10/1/98 – 10/6/98	I249
(b) Arteriosclerosis			I709

Apply the duration to I(a).

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

O. Relating and modifying conditions1. Implied site of disease

Certain conditions are classified in the ICD-10 according to the site affected, e.g.:

atrophy	embolism	necrosis
calcification	enlargement	obstruction
calculus	failure	perforation
congestion	fibrosis	rupture
degeneration	gangrene	stenosis
dilatation	hypertrophy	stones
edema	insufficiency	stricture

(This list is not all inclusive)

Occasionally these conditions are reported without specification of site. Relate conditions such as these for which the Classification does not provide a NOS code and for conditions, which are usually reported of a site. Generally, it may be assumed that such a condition was of the same site as another condition if the Classification provides for coding the condition of unspecified site to the site of the other condition. These coding principles apply whether or not there are other conditions reported on other lines in Part I. Apply the following instructions when relating a condition of unspecified site to the site of a specified condition:

a. Basic instructions for implied site of a disease(1) Conditions of unspecified site reported on the same line:

- (a) When conditions are reported on the same line, with or without a connecting term that implies a due to relationship, assume the condition of unspecified site was of the same site as the condition of specified site.

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Infarction with myocardial degeneration	I219 I515
(d) Coronary sclerosis	I251

Code the infarction as myocardial, the site of the condition reported on the same line.

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

- |   |     |                                 |      |
|---|-----|---------------------------------|------|
| I | (a) | Aspiration pneumonia            | J690 |
|   | (b) | Cerebrovascular accident due to | I64  |
|   | (c) | thrombosis                      | I633 |

Code the thrombosis as cerebral, the site of the condition reported on the same line.

- |   |     |   |      |      |
|---|-----|---|------|------|
| I | (a) | Duodenal ulcer with internal hemorrhage | K269 | K922 |
|---|-----|---|------|------|

Code Hemorrhage, duodenal (K922). Relate the internal hemorrhage to the site of the condition reported on the same line.

- |   |     |                     |      |      |
|---|-----|---------------------|------|------|
| I | (a) | CVA with hemorrhage | I64  | I619 |
|   | (b) | MI                  | I219 |      |

Code Hemorrhage, cerebral (I619). Relate the hemorrhage to the site of the condition reported on the same line.

- (b) When conditions of different sites are reported on the same line assume the condition of unspecified site was of the same site as the condition immediately preceding it.

- |   |     |                       |      |      |     |
|---|-----|-----------------------|------|------|-----|
| I | (a) | ASHD, infarction, CVA | I251 | I219 | I64 |
|   | (b) |                       |      |      |     |
|   | (c) |                       |      |      |     |

Code Infarction, heart (I219). Relate the infarction to the site of the condition immediately preceding it.

- (2) Conditions of unspecified site reported on a separate line:

- (a) If there is only one condition of a specified site reported either on the line above or below it, code to this site.

- |   |     |                    |      |
|---|-----|--------------------|------|
| I | (a) | Massive hemorrhage | K922 |
|   | (b) | Gastric ulceration | K259 |

Code the hemorrhage as gastric. Relate hemorrhage to the site of the condition reported on I(b).

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

I (a) Uremia	N19
(b) Chronic prostatitis	N411
(c) Benign hypertrophy	N40

Code the hypertrophy as prostatic. Relate hypertrophy to prostate, the site of the condition reported on I (b).

I (a) Internal hemorrhage	K868
(b) Pancreatitis	K85

Code Hemorrhage, pancreas (K868). Relate the internal hemorrhage to the site of the condition reported on I(b).

- (b) If there are conditions of different specified sites on the lines above and below it **and** the Classification provides for coding the condition of unspecified site to only one of these sites, code to that site.

I (a) Intestinal fistula	K632
(b) Obstruction	K566
(c) Carcinoma of peritoneum	C482

Code the obstruction as intestinal since the Classification does not provide for coding obstruction of the peritoneum.

- (c) If there are conditions of different specified sites on the lines above and below it **and** the Classification provides for coding the condition of unspecified site to both of these sites, code the condition unspecified as to site.

I (a) CVA	I64
(b) Thrombosis	I829
(c) ASHD	I251

Code Thrombosis NOS on I(b). Do not relate the thrombosis since the Classification provides codes for both sites reported.

- (3) Do not relate conditions which are not reported in the first position on a line to the line above. It is acceptable to relate conditions not reported as the first condition on a line to the line below.

I (a) Kidney failure	N19
(b) Vascular insufficiency $\bar{c}$ thrombosis	I99 I219
(c) ASHD	I251

Code Thrombosis, cardiac (I219). Relate thrombosis to line below.

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

- (4) When relating conditions to sites start at the top of the certificate and work down.

I (a) Hemorrhage	R5800
(b) Necrosis	K550
(c) Diverticulitis	K579

The hemorrhage cannot be related. Relate necrosis to intestine (K550), the site the Classification assumed for diverticulitis.

b. Relating specific categories

- (1) When ulcer, site unspecified or peptic ulcer NOS is reported causing, due to, or on the same line with gastrointestinal hemorrhage, code peptic ulcer NOS (K279).

I (a) Gastrointestinal hemorrhage	K922
(b) Peptic ulcer	K279
(c)	

Code peptic ulcer (K279). Do not relate to gastrointestinal.

I (a) Ulcer causing gastrointestinal hemorrhage	K922
(b)	K279

Code ulcer to peptic ulcer (K279)

- (2) When ulcer NOS (L984) is reported causing, due to, or on the same line with diseases classifiable to K20-K22, K30-K31, and K65, code peptic ulcer NOS (K279).

I (a) Peritonitis	K659
(b) Ulcer	K279

Code Ulcer, peptic (K279).

- (3) When hernia (K40-K46) is reported with disease(s) of unspecified site(s), relate the disease of unspecified site to the intestine.

I (a) Hernia with hemorrhage	K469 K922
------------------------------	-----------

Code Hemorrhage, intestine.

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

- (4) When calculus NOS or stones NOS is reported with pyelonephritis, code to N209 (urinary calculus).

I (a) Pyelonephritis with calculus N12 N209

Code calculus (N209) since it is reported with pyelonephritis.

- (5) When arthritis (any type) is reported with

- contracture code contracture of the site
- deformity code deformity acquired of the site

If no site is reported or if site is not indexed, code contracture or deformity, joint.

I (a) Phlebitis I809  
 (b) Contractures M245  
 (c) Osteoarthritis lower limbs M199

Code Contracture, joint (M245) since contracture lower limb is not indexed.

I (a) Pulmonary embolism I269  
 (b) Multiple deformities M219  
 (c) Arthritis in both hips M139

Code deformity (acquired) of hip.

- (6) When embolism, infarction, occlusion, thrombosis NOS is reported

- from a specified site code the condition of the site reported
- of a site from a specified site code the condition to both sites reported

I (a) Congestive heart failure I500  
 (b) Embolism from heart I219  
 (c) Arteriosclerosis I709

Code I(b) embolism of heart (I219).

I (a) Pulmonary embolism from leg veins I269  
 (b) I803  
 (c)

Code I(a) pulmonary embolism (I269) and I(b) leg veins embolism (I803).

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

- (7) Relate a condition of unspecified site to the complete term of a multiple site entity. If it is not indexed together, relate the condition to the site of the complete indexed term.

I (a) Cardiorespiratory arrest  $\bar{c}$  failure I469 R092

Code Failure, cardiorespiratory (R092). Relate failure to the complete term.

I (a) Cardiorespiratory arrest I469 I509  
(b)  $\bar{c}$  insufficiency

Code Insufficiency, heart (I509) since cardiorespiratory arrest is indexed to a heart condition. Relate insufficiency to the site of the complete term.

c. Exceptions to relating and modifying instructions

- (1) Do not relate the following conditions:

Arteriosclerosis  
Congenital anomaly  
Hypertension  
Infection NOS (refer to Section III, #3)  
Malignant neoplasm  
Paralysis

I (a) Arteriosclerosis with CVA I709 I64  
(b)  
(c)

Code Arteriosclerosis NOS (I709).

I (a) Cardiac arrest I469  
(b) Congenital anomaly Q899  
(c)

Code congenital anomaly NOS (Q899).

I (a) Pneumonia J189  
(b) Infection  
(c)

Code Pneumonia (J189) on I(a). Do not enter a code on I(b).

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

I (a) Perforation esophagus	K223
(b) Cancer	C80
(c)	

Code cancer NOS (C80).

- (2) Do not relate Edema NOS when reported with a disease of the circulatory system (I00-I99) or kidney.

I (a) Acute pulmonary congestion c̄ edema	J182	R609
(b) Congestive heart failure	I500	
(c) Hypertension, cardiovascular disease	I10	I516

Code Edema NOS since it is reported with a disease of the circulatory system.

- (3) Do not relate hemorrhage when causing a condition of a specified site. Relate hemorrhage to site of disease reported on **same** line or on line **below** only.

I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
(b) Hemorrhage	R5800

Code Hemorrhage NOS. Do not relate to respiratory.

I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
(b) Hemorrhage	K922
(c) Gastric ulcer	K259

Relate hemorrhage on I(b) to gastric on I(c) and code gastric hemorrhage.

- (4) Do not relate conditions classified to R00-R99 except:

Edema	R609
Gangrene and necrosis	R02
Hemorrhage	R5800
Stricture and stenosis	R688

I (a) Myocardial infarction with anoxia	I219	R090
---	------	------

Code anoxia as indexed. Do not relate to heart since anoxia is classified to R090.

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

I (a) Pneumonia with gangrene J189 J850

Code the gangrene as pulmonary, the site of the disease reported on the same line since gangrene is one of the exceptions.

- (5) Do not relate a disease condition that, by the name of the disease, implies a disease of a specified site unless it is obviously an erroneous code. If not certain, refer to supervisor.

I (a) Cirrhosis, encephalopathy K746 G934

Do not relate encephalopathy to liver since the name of the disease implies a disease of a specific site, brain.

I (a) Pulmonary embolism I269  
(b) Thrombophlebitis I809

Code thrombophlebitis (I809) as indexed. Do not relate thrombophlebitis since it is not usually reported of any site other than extremities.

I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage c̄ herniation I619 G935

Relate herniation to brain (G935) since hernia NOS (K469) goes to a digestive system code and it seems illogical to have a brain disease paired with a digestive disease.

2. Coding conditions classified to injuries as disease conditions

- a. Consider “injury,” “hematoma,” “laceration,” (or other condition that is usually but not always traumatic in origin) of a specified organ to be qualified as nontraumatic when it is reported due to or on the same line with a disease, provided there is no statement on the death certificate that indicates the condition was traumatic. If there is provision in the Classification for coding the condition that is considered to be qualified as nontraumatic as such, code accordingly. Otherwise, code to the category that has been provided for “Other” conditions of the organ (usually.8).

I (a) Laceration heart I518  
(b) Myocardial Infarction I219  
(c)

Consider laceration of heart as nontraumatic and code to other ill-defined heart diseases.

## SECTION II

## General Instructions

### Part O

### Relating and Modifying Conditions

---

- |                         |      |
|-------------------------|------|
| I (a) Subdural hematoma | I620 |
| (b) CVA                 | I64  |
| (c)                     |      |

Code Hematoma, subdural, nontraumatic (I620) as indexed.

- |                     |      |
|---------------------|------|
| I (a) Injury liver  | K768 |
| (b) Viral hepatitis | B199 |
| (c)                 |      |

Code injury, liver as nontraumatic (K768) other specified diseases of liver.

- |                                   |           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Cardiorespiratory failure   | R092      |
| (b) Intracerebral hemorrhage      | I619      |
| (c) Meningioma, subdural hematoma | D329 I620 |

Code subdural hematoma as nontraumatic since it is reported on the same line with a disease.

- |                                    |           |
|------------------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Liver failure                | K7290     |
| (b) Cirrhosis with injury to liver | K746 K768 |
| (c)                                |           |

Code injury to liver as nontraumatic since it is reported on the same line with a disease.

- |                                      |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Cerebral arteriosclerosis with | I672 I620 |
| (b) subdural hematoma                |           |

Code subdural hematoma as nontraumatic since it is reported on the same line with a disease.

- b. Some conditions are indexed directly to a traumatic category but the Classification also provides a nontraumatic code. When these conditions are reported due to or with a disease and an external cause is reported on the record or the Manner of Death box is checked as Accident, Homicide, Suicide, Pending Investigation or could not be determined, code the condition as traumatic.

**SECTION II**

**General Instructions**

**Part O**

**Relating and Modifying Conditions**

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Subdural hematoma	S065
9		(b) CVA	I64
		(c)	
<u>MOD</u>	II		&W18
A			
		Accident	Fell while walking

Code the subdural hematoma as traumatic since the manner of death is accidental.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Cardiorespiratory arrest	I469
0		(b) Subdural hematoma	S065
		(c) Arteriosclerosis	I709
<u>MOD</u>	II	Advanced age	R54 &W18
A			
		Accident	Home
		Fell in her room striking head	

Code the subdural hematoma as traumatic since the manner of death is accidental.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Cerebral hematoma with	S068 I672
9		(b) cerebral arteriosclerosis	
		(c)	
<u>MOD</u>	II		&X59
A			
		Accident	

Code the cerebral hematoma as traumatic since the manner of death is accidental.

- c. Some conditions are indexed directly to a traumatic category, but the Classification also provides a nontraumatic code. When these conditions are reported and the Manner of Death is Natural, code condition as nontraumatic unless the condition is reported due to or on the same line with an injury or external cause. This instruction applies only to conditions with the term “nontraumatic” in the Index. It does not apply to conditions in Section III, Intent of Certifier.

	I	(a) Subdural hematoma	I620
		(b)	
<u>MOD</u>	II		
N			
		Natural	

Code I(a) as nontraumatic since Manner of Death box states “Natural.”

**SECTION II**

**General Instructions**

**Part O**

**Relating and Modifying Conditions**

---

	I	(a) Subdural hematoma	I620		
		(b)			
		(c)			
<u>MOD</u>	II		W19		
N		<table border="1"><tr><td>Natural</td><td>Fell in hospital</td></tr></table>	Natural	Fell in hospital	
Natural	Fell in hospital				

Code I(a) as nontraumatic since Manner of Death box states “Natural.”

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Subdural hematoma	S065	
2		(b) Open wound of head	S019	
<u>MOD</u>	II	Fell in hospital	&W19	
N		<table border="1"><tr><td>Natural</td></tr></table>	Natural	
Natural				

Code subdural hematoma as traumatic since it is reported due to an injury, disregarding Natural in the Manner of Death box.

In order to assign the most appropriate code for a given diagnostic entity, it may be necessary to take other recorded information and the order in which the information is reported into account. It is important to interpret this information properly so the meaning intended by the certifier is correctly conveyed. The objective is to code each diagnostic entity in accordance with the intent of the certifier without combining separate codable entities. The following instructions help to determine the intent of the certifier. Apply Intent of Certifier instructions to “See also” terms in the Index as well.

1. Charcot's Arthropathy (A521)Code G98 (Arthropathy, neurogenic, neuropathic (Charcot's), nonsyphilitic):

When reported due to:

A30	Leprosy	G608	Hereditary sensory neuropathy
E10-E14	Diabetes mellitus	G901	Familial dysautonomia
E538	Subacute combined degeneration (of spinal cord)	G950	Syringomyelia
F101	Alcohol abuse	Q059	Spina bifida, meningo-myelocele
F102	Alcoholism	Y453	Indomethacin
G600	Hypertrophic interstitial neuropathy	Y453	Phenylbutazone
G600	Peroneal muscular atrophy	Y427	Corticosteroids

I	(a) Charcot's arthropathy	G98
	(b) Diabetes	E149

2. General Paresis (A521)a. Code G839 (Paralysis)

When reported due to or on the same line with:

A022	A988	B673	D233-D234	I748
A040	B003-B004	B676	D320-D339	J108
A066	B010-B011	B679	D352	J118
A078	B020-B022	B690	D355	M000-M1990
A170-A179	B03-B04	B719	D360-D367	M420-M429
A180	B050-B051	B75	D420-D439	M45-M519
A190-A191	B060	B832	D443	M860-M949
A203	B200-B24	B888	D446	N000-N399
A228	B258	B89-B99	D448	O100-O16
A260-A289	B259	C470	D45-D479	O740-O749
A321-A329	B261-B262	C479	D487	O900-O909
A368	B268	C700-C729	D489	O95
A390-A394	B270-B279	C751	E713	O994
A398-A399	A022	C754	E750-E756	P000-Q079
A428	A040	C758	F449	Q750-Q799
A440-A539	B338	C760	G000-G239	Q860-Q999
A544	B375	C770	G300-G379	R270-R278
A548	B384	C793-C794	G450-G459	R75
A680-A689	B428	C798-C97	G540-G729	
A692	B450-B459	D170	G839-G98	
A800-A959	B461	D180-D181	I10	
A981-A982	B49-B64	D210	I600-I709	

b. Code T144 (Paralysis, traumatic)Refer to Section V, Part S, Sequela of injuries, poisonings, and other consequences of external causes, if a sequela is indicated.

When reported due to or on the same line with:

S000-T149	W81-X39
T20-T35	X50-X59
T66-T79	X70-X84
T90-T95	X91-Y09
T981-T982	Y20-Y369
V010-W43	Y850-Y872
W45-W77	Y890-Y899

I (a) CVA with general paresis  
 (b)  
 (c)

I64 G839

**SECTION III**

**Intent of Certifier**

---

I	(a) General paresis	T144
	(b) Brain injury	S069
	(c)	
II	Auto accident	&V499

3. Organisms and Infections NOS (B99)

In order to determine which instruction to use, refer to the Index under the named organism or under Infection, named organism.

## a. Organisms and infections classified to A49 and B34

## (1) When an infectious or inflammatory condition is reported and

(a) Is preceded by condition classified to A49 or B34 **or**(b) A condition classifiable to A49 or B34 is reported as the only entry or first entry on the next lower line **or**

(c) Is followed by a condition classified to A49 or B34 separated by a connecting term not indicating a due to relationship

(i) If a single code is provided for the infectious or inflammatory condition modified by the condition classified to A49 or B34, use this code. Do not assign a separate code for the condition classifiable to A49 or B34. It may be necessary to use "due to" or "in" in the Index to assign the appropriate code.

I (a) E. coli diarrhea A044

Code as indexed under Diarrhea, due to, Escherichia coli.

I (a) Pneumonia J129

(b) Viral infection

Code as indexed under Pneumonia, viral.

I (a) Meningitis and sepsis G000 A413

(b) H. influenzae

Code as indexed under Meningitis, Haemophilus (influenzae) and Septicemia, Haemophilus influenzae.

I (a) Sepsis with staph A412

Code as staphylococcal sepsis as indexed under Septicemia, staphylococcal.I (a) Pneumonia  $\bar{c}$  MRSA J152Code as methicillin resistant staphylococcal aureus pneumonia as indexed under Pneumonia, MRSA.

- (ii) If (i) does not apply, and the Index provides a code for the infectious or inflammatory condition qualified as “bacterial,” “infectious,” “infective,” or “viral,” assign the appropriate code based on the reported type of organism. Do not assign a separate code for the condition classified to A49 or B34.

I (a) Coxsackie virus pneumonia J128

Coxsackie virus is a specified virus. Code as indexed under Pneumonia, viral, specified NEC.

I (a) Peritonitis K650  
(b) Campylobacter

Campylobacter is a specified bacteria. Code as indexed under Peritonitis, bacterial.

I (a) Pneumonia with coxsackie virus J128

Code as coxsackie virus pneumonia. Since coxsackie virus is a specified virus, code as indexed under Pneumonia, viral, specified NEC.

- (iii) If (i) and (ii) do not apply, assign the NOS code for the infectious or inflammatory condition. Do not assign a separate code for the condition classified to A49 or B34.

I (a) Klebsiella urinary tract infection N390

The Index does not provide a code for Infection, urinary tract specified as bacterial, infectious, infective, or Klebsiella. Therefore, code Infection, urinary tract.

I (a) Pyelonephritis N12  
(b) Staphylococcus

The Index does not provide a code for pyelonephritis specified as bacterial, infectious, infective, or staphylococcal. Therefore, code Pyelonephritis as indexed.

I (a) Pyelonephritis and pseudomonas N12

Code as pseudomonas pyelonephritis. The Index does not provide a code for pyelonephritis specified as bacterial, infectious, infective or pseudomonas. Therefore, code Pyelonephritis as indexed.

---

b. Organisms and infections classified to categories other than A49 and B34

(1) When an infectious or inflammatory condition is reported and

(a) Is preceded by a condition classifiable to Chapter I other than A49 or B34

- (i) Refer to the Index under the infectious or inflammatory condition. If a single code is provided for this condition, modified by the condition from Chapter I, use this code. It may be necessary to use “due to” or “in” in the Index to assign the appropriate code.

I (a) Cytomegaloviral pneumonia                      B250

Code as indexed under Pneumonia, cytomegaloviral.

- (ii) If (i) does not apply, refer to Volume 1, Chapter I to determine if the Classification provides an appropriate fourth character. Indications of appropriate fourth characters for sites would be “of other sites,” “other specified organs,” or “other organ involvement.”

I (a) Candidiasis peritonitis                              B378

Since this term is not indexed together, refer to Volume I, Chapter I and select the fourth character, .8, candidiasis of other sites.

- (iii) If (i) and (ii) do not apply, code as two separate conditions.

I (a) Mononucleosis pharyngitis                      B279 J029

Since this term is not indexed together and Volume I, Chapter I does not provide an appropriate fourth character under B27.-, code as two separate conditions.

- (b) A condition from Chapter I other than A49 or B34 is reported as the only entry or the first entry on the next lower line

- (i) Code each condition as indexed where reported.

I (a) Peritonitis    K659  
       (b) Candidiasis    B379

Since candidiasis is classified to a condition other than A49 or B34, code each condition as indexed.

(c) A condition from Chapter I other than A49 or B34 is reported separated by a connecting term not indicating a due to relationship

(i) Code each condition as indexed where reported.

I (a) Pneumonia with candidiasis J189 B379

Since candidiasis is classified to a condition other than A49 or B34, code each condition as indexed.

c. Do not use HIV or AIDS to modify an infectious or inflammatory condition. Code as two separate conditions.

I (a) HIV pneumonia B24 J189

d. When an infectious or inflammatory condition is reported and a specified organism or specified nonsystemic infection is not the only entry or the first entry on the next lower line.

Code the infectious or inflammatory condition and the organism or infection separately.

I (a) Pneumonia J189  
(b) Emphysema & viral infection J439 B349

I (a) Peritonitis K659  
(b) Gastric ulcer and staphylococcal infection K259 A490

e. When an infectious or inflammatory condition is reported and

(1) Infection NOS is reported as the only entry or the first entry on the next lower line

Code the infectious or inflammatory condition where it is entered on the certificate and do not enter a code for infection NOS, but take into account if it modifies the infectious condition.

I (a) Cholecystitis & hepatitis K819 B159  
(b) Infection

I (a) Meningitis G039  
(b) Infection & brain tumor D432

(2) Infection NOS is not the only entry or the first entry on the next lower line

, Code the infectious or inflammatory condition where it is entered on the certificate and code infection NOS separately.

I (a) Septicemia	A419
(b) Diabetes & infection	E149 B99

f. When a noninfectious or noninflammatory condition is reported and infection NOS is reported on a lower line

, Code the noninfectious or noninflammatory condition as indexed and code infection NOS (B99) where entered on the certificate.

I (a) ASHD	I251
(b) Infection	B99

g. When an organism is reported preceding two or more infectious conditions reported consecutively on the same line

, Code each of the infectious conditions modified by the organism.

I (a) Staphylococcal pneumonia and	J152 G003
(b) meningitis	

h. When any condition is reported and a generalized infection such as bacteremia, fungemia, sepsis, septicemia, systemic infection, or viremia is reported on a lower line

, Code both the condition and the generalized infection where entered on certificate. Do not modify the condition by the infection.

I (a) Bronchopneumonia	J180
(b) Septicemia	A419

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Viremia	B349

4. Erythremia (C940)Code D751 (Secondary erythremia):

When reported due to:

A000-D489	G000-G419	L950-L959	R030	R893
D510-D619	G450-G459	M000-M1990	R040-R049	S000-Y899
D751	G600-G979	M300-M359	R090-R098	
D760-E149	I00-J989	M420-M549	R160-R162	
E240-E279	K20-L00	M800-M949	R31	
E65-E678	L100-L139	M960-M969	R58-R5800	
E890	L230-L309	N000-N399	R730-R739	
E896-E899	L500-L599	N700-N768	R75	
F100-F199	L710-L719	N980	R780	
F55	L930-L932	N990-Q999	R826	

I (a) Septicemia	A419
(b) Erythremia	D751
(c) Polycythemia	D45

5. Polycythemia (D45)

Excludes:

idiopathic  
 primary  
 rubra  
 vera

Code D751 (Secondary polycythemia):

When reported due to:

A000-D489	G000-G419	L950-L959	R030	R893
D510-D619	G450-G459	M000-M1990	R040-R049	S000-Y899
D751	G600-G979	M300-M359	R090-R098	
D760-E149	I00-J989	M420-M549	R160-R162	
E240-E279	K20-L00	M800-M949	R31	
E65-E678	L100-L139	M960-M969	R58-R5800	
E890	L230-L309	N000-N399	R730-R739	
E896-E899	L500-L599	N700-N768	R75	
F100-F199	L710-L719	N980	R780	
F55	L930-L932	N990-Q999	R826	

I (a) Polycythemia	D751
(b) Pneumonia	J189

I (a) Polycythemia	&D751
(b) Chloromycetin therapy	Y408

I (a) Polycythemia vera	D45
(b) Emphysema	J439

6. Hemolytic Anemia (D589)Code D594 (Secondary hemolytic anemia):

When reported due to:

A000-D489	F100-F169	O000-O998
D594	F180-F199	P550-P579
D65-D699	G000-G09	Q200-Q289
D760	I00-I519	R75
D800-D899	I776	R780
E201	J100-J22	R823
E280-E289	K700-K769	R826
E40-E46	M000-M359	R893
E700-E899	N000-N399	S000-Y899

I (a) Hemolytic anemia	D594
(b) Hairy cell leukemia	C914
(c)	
I (a) Hemolytic anemia	D589
(b)	
(c)	
II Hypogammaglobulinemia	D801
I (a) Secondary hemolytic	D594
(b) anemia	

7. Sideroblastic Anemia (D643)a. Code D641 (Secondary sideroblastic anemia due to disease):

When reported due to:

A000-C97	E230	F180-F182	J069	M023
D45	E531	F190-F192	J65	M101
D461	E539	F55	K700-K703	M352
D471	E798	G030	K709	N143
D510-D599	E800-E802	G040	K721	N188-N19
D640-D643	E831	G361	K730-K746	N341
D648	E880	G933	K760	O980-O981
D731	E890	I330	K761	R162
D748	F100-F102	I423	K766	R75
D758	F109-F112	I729	K769	R780
D860-D869	F119-F122	I888	K908	R826
D892	F130-F132	J00	L081	R893
E018-E02	F140-F142	J020	L448	R897
E032-E0390	F150-F152	J030	L946	
E050-E059	F160-F162	J040-J042	M021	

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Sideroblastic anemia	D641
(c) Alcoholic cirrhosis	K703

b. Code D642 (Secondary sideroblastic anemia due to drugs or toxins):

When reported due to:

D642  
T560  
X49  
Y400-Y599  
Y86  
Y880

I (a) CHF	I500
(b) Sideroblastic anemia	&D642
(c) Chloramphenicol	Y402

8. Hemorrhagic Purpura NOS (D693)Code D690 (Hemorrhagic purpura not due to thrombocytopenia):

When reported due to:

A000-C97	F119	I872	N250-N311	R104
D45-D460	F120	I878	N312-N319	R162
D462-D469	F121-F122	I879-I889	N320-N390	R233
D471	F130-F132	I898-I899	N392	R238
D510	F140	I99-J00	N398-N399	R291
D511-D581	F141-F142	J020	N719	R31
D582	F150	J030	N897	R398
D588-D618	F151-F152	J040-J042	N910-N939	R72
D619	F160-F162	J069	N948	R75
D648	F180-F181	J65	N950-N959	R780
D65-D692	F182	K658	N991	R826
D698-D71	F190-F191	K660	P070-P073	R893
D720	F192	K700-K769	P219	R897
D721	G000-G032	K908	P221-P289	T360-T658
D728	G038-G039	L081	P546	T659
D729-D759	G040	L272	Q458	T780-T784
D860-D869	G042-G049	L448	Q680	T789
D892	G060	L573	Q740-Q741	T806
E240	G061-G09	L80-L819	Q758	T818
E241	G312	L946	Q772	T881
E242	G361	L958	Q775-Q776	T885
E243	G373-G374	M023	Q778	T886-T887
E248	G540	M050-M089	Q779-Q783	T96-T97
E249	G92	M101	Q785	T981
E301	G933	M120	Q788-Q789	X20-X29
E54	G958	M138	Q791	X40-X48
E569	G961	M159	Q794-Q795	X49
E642	I00-I019	M300	Q796	X60-X69
E648	I10	M301-M352	Q798	Y10-Y19
E703	I308	M358	Q808	Y400-Y599
E798	I330-I339	M359	Q810-Q819	Y86
E850-E859	I400-I409	M898	Q820	Y870
E871	I423	N000-N078	Q821-Q825	Y872
E880	I729	N079	Q828	
F100	I749	N10-N189	Q848	
F101-F102	I770	N19	Q872-Q873	
F110-F112	I771-I779	N200-N219	Q878	

- I (a) CVA
- (b) Hemorrhagic purpura
- (c) Leukemia

I64  
D690  
C959

9. Thrombocytopenia (D696)Code D695 (Secondary thrombocytopenia):

When reported due to:

A000-D447	E755-E756	G361	L448	P221-P289
D448	E768-E779	G373-G374	L590	P350-P399
D449-D509	E782	G450-G452	L818	P550-P560
D510	E798	G454-G459	L946	P570
D511-D691	E803	G540	M021	P610
D692	E835	G903	M023	P614
D693-D699	E871	G92	M050-M089	Q204-Q205
D730-D752	E880	G933	M101	Q206
D758	E888	G936	M120	Q208
D759-D763	E890	G938	M138	Q209
D814	E898	G951	M159	Q210
D820	F100	G958	M199-M1990	Q220-Q246
D821	F101-F102	G961	M219	Q248
D840	F110	I00-I019	M300	Q249
D841-D848	F111-F112	I10-I629	M301-M329	Q289
D860-D892	F119	I630	M352	Q758
E000-E009	F120	I631	M898	Q775-Q776
E018-E02	F121-F122	I633-I677	N000-N078	Q778
E031-E033	F130	I678-I679	N079	Q779-Q783
E034	F131-F132	I690-I891	N10-N219	Q788-Q789
E035-E0390	F140	I898	N250-N311	Q798
E055	F141-F142	I899-I972	N312-N319	Q828
E059	F150	I978	N320-N390	Q850
E071	F151-F152	I99	N392	R001
E230	F160	J00	N398-N399	R008
E349	F161-F162	J020	N980-N989	R012
E46	F180-F181	J030	N991	R161-R162
E538	F182	J040-J042	O360-O369	R233
E539-E54	F190-F191	J069	O430-O431	R291
E560-E639	F192	J100-J118	O438	R31
E642	F55	J65	O439-O469	R398
E648	G000-G032	K658	O60	R58-R5800
E649	G038-G039	K660-K661	O670-O689	R75
E713	G040	K700-K769	O700-O719	R771
E740	G042-G048	K908	O908	R780
E750	G049-G060	K920-K921	O980-O981	R788
E752	G061-G09	K922	P070-P073	R798
E753	G312	L081	P219	R825

**SECTION III****Intent of Certifier**

---

R826	T752	T981	X69-Y369	Y658
R827-R828	T780-T783	T983	Y400-Y601	Y66-Y831
R829	T784	V010-V99	Y603	Y840
R893	T788-T789	W00-W53	Y605	Y842
R897	T803-T804	W54-W56	Y610-Y611	Y848-Y849
T200	T808-T809	W57	Y613	Y850-Y872
T201-T289	T818	W58-W87	Y615	Y880-Y881
T300	T881	W88-W93	Y617	Y890-Y891
T301-T329	T882-T883	W94-X19	Y620-Y621	Y899
T360-T658	T885	X20-X32	Y623	
T659	T886-T888	X34-X39	Y625	
T66-T670	T889	X40-X48	Y630-Y633	
T68	T950-T97	X49-X59	Y640-Y655	

I (a) Multiple hemorrhages	R5800
(b) Thrombocytopenia	D695
(c) Cancer lung	C349

10. Hyperparathyroidism (E213)Code E211 (Secondary hyperparathyroidism):

When reported due to:

A180	D136-D137	
A187	D300-D309	
A188	D351-D353	
B650-B839	D410-D419	
B902-B908	D442-D444	
C250-C259	E130-E139	
C64-C689	E15-E215	
C750-C752	E240-E259	
C788	E270-E279	
C790-C791	E892	
C798	M880-M889	
C900-C902	N000-N399	
D017	Q600-Q649	
D090-D091	Q770-Q789	
D093	Q798	
I (a) Hypercalcemia		E835
(b) Hyperparathyroidism		E211
(c) Cancer parathyroid gland		C750

11. Hyperaldosteronism (E269)Code E261 (Secondary hyperaldosteronism)

When reported due to:

A220-A229	E250-E269	I10-I139	T880-T889
B500-B54	E270-E46	I500-I509	T96-T97
B560-B575	E511-E519	I701	T983
C740-C749	E660-E669	I778	X40-X49
C797	E713	K700-K709	X60-X69
D093	E86	K721-K7210	X85-X90
D350	E871	K730-K746	Y10-Y19
D441	E880	K85	Y400-Y599
D448-D449	E890	N000-N399	Y86-Y880
D840-D849	E892	T360-T659	
E000-E249	E895-E899	T783	

I (a) MI	I219
(b) Hyperaldosteronism	E261
(c) Renal artery stenosis	I701

12. Lactase Deficiency (E730)Code E731 (Secondary lactase deficiency):

When reported due to:

E730-E749	K590-K599
K500	K630
K508-K511	K633
K519-K529	K639
K570	K900-K902
K574	K912
K580-K589	N200-N209

I (a) Severe diarrhea	K529
(b) Lactase deficiency	E731
(c) Celiac disease	K900

Code I(b) secondary lactase deficiency, E731, since reported due to celiac disease.

13. Alcohol (F100, F101, F109, R780, R826, R893)

When reported anywhere on the certificate, code:

Alcohol (ethyl)(isopropyl)(methyl) (propanol)(propyl)(methanol)	F109
Alcohol ingestion	F109
Alcohol intoxication	F100
Alcohol overdose	F101
Alcohol overindulgence	F101
Blood alcohol (any %)	R780
Body fluid alcohol (any %)	R893
Drinking	F109
Intoxication (acute) NOS	F100
Urine alcohol (any %)	R826

**NOTE:** Do not use accident reported in Manner of Death box to code the above terms to nature of injury and external cause.

	I (a) Alcohol intoxication	F100
	(b) Blood alcohol 3%	R780
<u>MOD</u>	(c)	
A	II Excessive drinking	F100

Accident
----------

Code each entry as indexed. Accident in Manner of Death box does not require a code and does not change the code assignment.

I (a) G. I. hemorrhage	K922
(b) Cirrhosis of liver	K746
II Intoxicated	F100

Code each entry as indexed.

**Exceptions:**

- (1) When alcohol poisoning or alcohol toxicity is reported anywhere on certificate, code the previous terms to nature of injury and external cause codes.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Excessive drinking	T519	&X45
9	II Alcohol poisoning	T519	

Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause codes since alcohol poisoning is reported on the certificate. Code Part II to the nature of injury code only.

- 
- (2) When the previous terms and drug poisoning are reported on the same record, refer to Section V, Part Q, 4, Poisoning by alcohol and drugs to determine if there is evidence of synergistic effects of the alcohol and drugs.

Place I (a) Combined action of alcohol T519 X45 T427 &X41  
9 (b) intoxication and sedative overdose  
(c)

Interpret I(a) as poisoning and code nature of injury and external cause codes for alcohol and drugs. Precede the external cause code for the drug with an ampersand.

- (3) When intoxication (acute) NOS is reported due to drugs or poisonous substances, refer to Section V, Part Q, 5, Intoxication (acute) NOS due to specified substances.

14. Korsakov's Disease, Psychosis, or Syndrome (F106)

Code F04 (Nonalcoholic Korsakov's disease, psychosis, or syndrome):

When reported due to :

A000-D591	L951	S840-S899	T910
D592	L980-L981	S910-S929	T911-T915
D593-D610	M000-N459	S940-S999	T918
D611	N490-N809	T012-T029	T919-T922
D612-E243	N990-N992	T041-T08	T924-T926
E248-E519	N994-Q999	T091	T928
E52	R54	T093-T10	T929-T932
E530-F09	R75	T111	T934-T936
F200-G311	S010-S029	T113-T12	T938
G318-G619	S040-S050	T131	T939
G620	S052-S099	T133-T139	T940-T953
G622	S110-S129	T141-T142	T954
G628-G720	S140-S199	T144-T329	T958-T959
G722-G98	S210-S229	T340-T349	T96-X40
I00-I4250	S240-S299	T351-T399	X43-X44
I427-J989	S310-S328	T410-T422	X46-Y449
K20-K291	S340-S399	T425-T426	Y451-Y468
K293-K669	S410-S429	T427	Y480-Y485
K710-K85	S440-S499	T428	Y500-Y899
K861-L109	S510-S529	T440-T509	
L129-L449	S540-S599	T520-T889	
L510-L599	S610-S628	T901-T903	
L710-L719	S640-S699	T904	
L88	S710-S729	T905	
L920	S740-S799	T908	
L928-L932	S810-S829	T909	

- |                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Korsakoff's psychosis   | F04  |
| (b) Wernicke's encephalopathy | E512 |
| (c)                           |      |

15. Drug Use NOS - Named Drug Use (F11-F16, F18-F19)

Code drug use NOS, F199, when reported anywhere on the certificate. Code use of named drug, F11-F16, F18-F19 with fourth character "9," when reported anywhere on the certificate and the named drug is listed in Volume 3, under Addiction/Dependence. If the named drug is not listed in Volume 3 under Addiction/Dependence, do not enter a code.

**Exceptions:**

- (1) Complication(s) reported due to (named) drug use. Code the (named) drug use to the appropriate external cause code for adverse effects of drugs in therapeutic use unless the drug is one not used for medical care purposes. Refer to Section V, Part R, 1, Drugs, medicaments, biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59) for coding instructions.
- (2) There is mention of drug poisoning anywhere on the certificate, code the (named) drug use to F11-F16, F18-F19, with fourth character "9," if listed in Volume 3 under Addiction/Dependence. If (named) drug is not indexed in Volume 3 under Addiction/Dependence, code F19, specified drug NEC with fourth character "9." Refer to Section V, Part Q, 2, Poisoning by drugs.

I (a) Chronic alcoholism	F102
(b)	
(c)	
II Drug use	F199

Code drug use to F199. There is no complication reported due to the drug use.

I (a) Cancer of pancreas	C259
(b)	
(c)	
II Methadone use	F119

Code methadone use to F119 as listed under Dependence in Volume 3. There is no complication reported due to the methadone use.

I (a) Systemic lupus erythematosus	M329
(b)	
(c)	
II Steroid use	

Do not code steroid use. Steroid is not listed in Volume 3 under Addiction/Dependence and no complication is reported due to the steroid use.

- I (a) Diabetes E139
- (b) Steroid use Y427
- (c)
- II Rheumatoid arthritis &M069

Code the diabetes as a complication of the steroids given in therapeutic use for rheumatoid arthritis. Refer to Section V, Part R, 1, Drugs, medicaments, biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59) for coding complications of drugs during therapeutic use.

- I (a) Bacterial endocarditis &I330
- (b) Use of morphine Y450
- (c)

Code the bacterial endocarditis as a complication of the morphine given in therapeutic use. Precede the complication with an ampersand since the condition requiring the drug is not reported. Refer to Section V, Part R, 1, Drugs, medicaments, biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59) for coding complications of drugs during therapeutic use.

- Place I (a) Acute cocaine poisoning T405 &X42
- 9 (b)
- (c)
- MOD II Cocaine use F149 T405
- A
 

Accident	Ingested cocaine
----------	------------------

Code cocaine use to F149 as listed under Dependence in Volume 3 since reported on the certificate with drug poisoning. Refer to Section V, Part Q, 2, Poisoning by drugs for instructions in coding drug poisoning.

- Place I (a) Respiratory failure J969
- 9 (b) Acute drug use F199
- (c)
- MOD II &X42 T402
- A
 

Accident	Overdose of morphine
----------	----------------------

Code acute drug use to F199 since reported on the certificate with drug poisoning.

**SECTION III**

**Intent of Certifier**

---

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Poisoning by drugs (b) (c)	T509 &X44
	II Use of sedatives	F139

Code use of sedative to F139 as listed under Dependence in Volume 3 since reported on the certificate with drug poisoning.

16. Tobacco Use (F179)

Code F179 (Tobacco use):

When the certifier selects “Yes” or “Probably” in the tobacco box on the US Standard Certificate of Death.

Did tobacco use contribute to death?

Yes       Probably   
No       Unknown

The F179 should follow the last code in Part II.

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Lung cancer	C349
II COPD	J449 F179

Did tobacco use contribute to death?

Yes       Probably   
No       Unknown

17. Psychotic Episode NOS (F239)

Code F068 (Psychotic episode, organic NEC):

When reported due to or on the same line with organic conditions classifiable to the following categories:

A000-E899	L88	R042-R048
F068	L920	R060-R065
G000-G98	L928-L932	R068
H600-H709	L951	R090-R091
H720-H739	L980-L981	R291
I00-J989	M000-N459	R54
K20-L109	N490-N809	R600-R609
L120-L449	N990-N992	R75
L510-L599	N994-Q999	
L710-L719	R02	
I (a) TIA's with psychotic episodes		G459 F068
(b) Cerebral arteriosclerosis		I672
(c) Arteriosclerosis		I709

Code psychotic episode on I(a) F068, since reported on the same line with TIA (G459). It could also be coded to F068 since reported due to cerebral arteriosclerosis (I672).

18. Psychosis (any F29)  
Mental Disorder (any F99)

Code F09 (Psychosis, organic NEC):

When reported due to or on the same line with organic conditions classifiable to the following categories:

A000-E899	S010-S029	S910-S929	T910
F09	S040-S050	S940-S999	T911-T915
G000-G98	S052-S099	T012-T029	T918
I00-J989	S110-S129	T041-T08	T919-T922
K20-L109	S140-S199	T091	T924-T926
L120-L449	S210-S229	T093-T10	T928
L510-L599	S240-S299	T111	T929-T932
L710-L719	S310-S328	T113-T12	T934-T936
L88	S340-S399	T131	T938
L920	S410-S429	T133-T139	T939
L928-L932	S440-S499	T141-T142	T940-T953
L951	S510-S529	T144-T329	T954
L980-L981	S540-S599	T340-T349	T958-T959
M000-N459	S610-S628	T351-T889	T96-Y899
N490-N809	S640-S699	T901-T903	
N990-N992	S710-S729	T904	
N994-Q999	S740-S799	T905	
R54	S810-S829	T908	
R75	S840-S899	T909	
I (a) Pneumonia		J189	
(b) Psychosis – cerebrovascular arteriosclerosis		F09	I672
(c) Arteriosclerosis		I709	
I (a) Cardiorespiratory arrest		I469	
(b) Heart failure		I509	
(c) Multiple sclerosis and mental disorder		G35	F09

19. Dissociative Disorder (F449)

Code F065 (Organic dissociative disorder):

When reported due to organic conditions classifiable to the following categories:

A000-E899	L920	R068
F065	L928-L932	R090-R091
G000-G98	L951	R291
H600-H709	L980-L981	R54
H720-H739	M000-N459	R600-R609
I00-J989	N490-N809	R75
K20-L109	N990-N992	S000-Y899
L120-L449	N994-Q999	
L510-L599	R02	
L710-L719	R042-R048	
L88	R060-R065	

I (a) Dissociative disorder	F065
(b) Chronic subdural hematoma	T905
(c) Car accident	&Y850

Code I(a) organic dissociative disorder, F065, since reported due to an injury.

I (a) Dissociative disorder	F065
(b) Senility	R54

Code I(a) organic dissociative disorder, F065, since reported due to senility.

20. Personality Disorder (F609)  
Personality Change (Enduring) (F629)

Code F070 (Organic personality disorder):

When reported due to organic conditions classifiable to the following categories:

A000-E899	N490-N809	S440-S499	T093-T10
F070	N990-Q999	S510-S529	T111
G000-G98	R54	S540-S599	T113-T12
I00-J989	R75	S610-S628	T131
K20-L109	S010-S029	S640-S699	T133-T139
L120-L449	S040-S050	S710-S729	T141-T142
L510-L599	S052-S099	S740-S799	T144-T329
L710-L719	S110-S129	S810-S829	T340-T349
L88	S140-S199	S840-S899	T351-T889
L920	S210-S229	S910-S929	T901-T922
L928-L932	S240-S299	S940-S999	T924-T932
L951	S310-S328	T012-T029	T934-Y899
L980-L981	S340-S399	T041-T08	
M000-N459	S410-S429	T091	

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Personality disorder	F070
9	(b) Head injury	S099
	(c) Assault	&Y09

Code I(a) organic personality disorder, F070, since reported due to a head injury.

I (a) Personality disorder	F070
(b) Meningioma brain	D320

Code I(a) organic personality disorder, F070, since reported due to a meningioma brain.

I (a) Personality change	F070
(b) Jakob-Creutzfeldt Syndrome	A810

Code I(a) organic personality disorder, F070, since reported due to Jakob-Creutzfeldt Syndrome.

21. Parkinson's Disease (G20)Code G219 (Secondary parkinsonism):

When reported due to:

A170-A179	B902	S000-T357
A504-A539	B91	T66-T876
A810-A819	B941	T900-T982
A870-A89	B949	T983
B003	G000-G039	X50-X59
B010	G041-G09	X70-X84
B021-B022	G20-G2000	X91-Y09
B051	G218-G219	Y20-Y369
B060	I672-I673	Y600-Y849
B200-B24	I698	Y850-Y872
B261	I709	Y881-Y899
B375	I950-I959	
B900	R75	

I (a) Parkinson's disease	G219
(b) Tuberculous meningitis	A170
(c)	
I (a) Parkinsonism	G219
(b) Arteriosclerosis	I709
(c)	
I (a) Secondary Parkinson's disease	G219
(b)	
(c)	

22. Cerebral Sclerosis (G379)Code I672 (Cerebrovascular atherosclerosis):

a. When reported due to or on the same line with:

A500-A539	M100-M109
E000-E349	M300-M359
E660-E669	N000-N289
E700-E839	N390
E890-E899	Q600-Q619
I10-I139	Q630-Q639
I672	Q890-Q892
I700-I709	R54
I770	T383
I99	Y423

b. When reported as causing:

I600-I679

I (a) Cerebral edema	G936
(b) Cerebral sclerosis	G379
I (a) Cerebral thrombosis	I633
(b) Cerebral sclerosis	I672
I (a) ASHD	I251
(b)	
(c)	
II Cerebral sclerosis, hypertension	1672 I10

23. Myopathy (G729)Code I429 (Cardiomyopathy):

When reported due to:

A162-A1690	E660-E669	M069
A178	E740	M100-M109
A181	E760-E769	M300-M359
A188	E831	M625
B200-B24	E850-E859	N000-N399
B332	E880-E889	P200-P220
B560-B575	F100-F199	Q200-Q249
C000-C97	G111	R31
D151	G600	R54
D467-D469	G700-G729	R75
D500-D649	I00-I259	T360-T66
D758	I300-I4290	Y400-Y599
D860-D869	I514-I5150	Y842
E000-E0390	I700-I709	Y883
E050-E059	K700-K709	
E100-E149	K721	
E220	K730-K739	
E40-E519	K743	
E639	K745-K746	
E641	K760	
E648-E649	K768-K769	
I (a) Myopathy		I429
(b) ASHD		I251
(c)		

Code I(a) cardiomyopathy, I429, since reported due to a specific heart condition.

24. Brain Damage, child (G809)

Code G939 (Brain damage):

When reported due to:

A000- F199	M000-N399	R400-R402
F200-F99	N700-N889	R54
G000-G98	O000-Q999	R560-R5800
H600-H749	R02	R600-R609
H950-J80	R040-R049	R630
J82-J989	R060-R068	R75
K700-K769	R090-R092	S000-Y899
L00-L989	R291	

Male, 11 years

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Brain damage	G809

Since the age of the decedent is less than 18 years of age and there is no indication of the cause of the brain damage, code G809, brain damage, child.

Male, 11 years

I (a) Brain damage	G939
(b) Down's syndrome	Q909

Since there is an indication of the cause of the brain damage, code brain damage, G939.

25. Paralysis (any G81, G82, or G83 excluding senile paralysis)

Code the paralysis for decedent age 28 days and over to G80 (Infantile cerebral palsy) with appropriate fourth character:

When reported due to:

P000-P969

Female, 3 months

- |                                    |       |      |
|------------------------------------|-------|------|
| I (a) Pneumonia                    | 1wk   | J189 |
| (b) Paraplegia                     | 3 mos | G808 |
| (c) Injury spinal cord since birth |       | P115 |

Code the paraplegia on I(b) to infantile paraplegia, G808, since reported due to an injury of the spinal cord since birth.

26. Cataract (H269)

Code H264 (Secondary cataract):

When reported due to:

A1690	H269
B200-B24	H579
E100-E149	R54
E160-E162	R75
E711	T66
E742	Y493
E830	Y540
E835	Y576
H264	

I (a) CVA	I64
(b) Cataract	H264
(c) Diabetes	E149

Code I(b), secondary cataract, H264, since reported due to diabetes (E149).

27. Varices NOS and Bleeding Varices NOS (I839)

Code (a) I859 (Esophageal varices) or  
(b) I850 ( Bleeding esophageal varices):

When reported due to or on same line with:

Alcoholic diseases classified to: F100-F109

Liver diseases classified to: B150-B199, B251, B942, K700-K769

I (a) Varices	I859
(b) Cirrhosis of liver	K746
I (a) Bleeding varices	I850
(b) Cirrhosis of liver	K746

- 28. Pneumonia in J188 or J189  
Bronchopneumonia (J180)  
Lobar pneumonia, organism unspecified only in J181

Code J182 (Hypostatic pneumonia):

When reported due to:

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| Bedbound        | Lying in bed         |
| Bedfast         | Prolonged recumbency |
| Bedrest         | Recumbency           |
| Bedridden       | Sitting in chair     |
| Bed Patient     | Stasis               |
| Confined to bed |                      |
| Hypostasis      |                      |
| Immobility      |                      |
| Immobilization  |                      |
| Inactivity      |                      |

- |                      |      |
|----------------------|------|
| I (a) Cardiac arrest | I469 |
| (b) Bronchopneumonia | J182 |
| (c) Inactivity       |      |

29. Pneumoconiosis (J64)

Code J60 (Coal worker's pneumoconiosis):

When Occupation is reported as:

- Coal miner
- Coal worker
- Miner

Occupation: Coal Miner

- |                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| I (a) Bronchitis   | J40 |
| (b) Pneumoconiosis | J60 |

30. Diaphragmatic Hernia in K44.-

Code Q790 (Congenital diaphragmatic hernia):

When reported as causing hypoplasia or dysplasia of lung NOS (Q336).

- |   |                          |      |
|---|--------------------------|------|
| I | (a) Lung dysplasia       | Q336 |
|   | (b) Diaphragmatic hernia | Q790 |
|   | (c)                      |      |

31. Laennec's Cirrhosis NOS (K703)Code K746 (Nonalcoholic Laennec's cirrhosis):

When reported due to:

A000-B99	K761
C000-D539	K763
D730-D739	K768-K85
E02-E0390	K861-K909
E100-E149	Q410-Q459
E500-E519	Q900-Q999
E530-E849	R75
F110-F169	T360-T509
F180-F199	T520-T659
I050-I099	X40-X44
I110-I119	X46-X49
I130-I425	Y400-Y572
I427-I519	Y574-Y599
I81	Y640
K500-K519	Y86
K630-K639	Y880
K710-K718	Y881
K730-K760	

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Laennec's cirrhosis	K746
(c) Diabetes	E149

Code I(b) nonalcoholic Laennec's cirrhosis since reported "due to" diabetes.

32. Biliary Cirrhosis NOS (K745)Code K744 (Secondary biliary cirrhosis):

When reported due to:

A000-B99	K761
C000-D539	K763
D730-D739	K768-K909
E02-E0390	Q410-Q459
E100-E149	Q900-Q999
E500-E849	R75
F100-F169	R780
F180-F199	R826
I050-I099	R893
I110-I119	T360-T659
I130-I519	X40-X49
I81	Y400-Y599
K500-K519	Y640
K630-K639	Y86
K700-K718	Y880
K730-K760	Y881

- |                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Biliary cirrhosis           | K745 |
| (b)                               |      |
| (c)                               |      |
| I (a) Primary biliary cirrhosis   | K743 |
| (b)                               |      |
| (c)                               |      |
| I (a) Secondary biliary cirrhosis | K744 |
| (b)                               |      |
| (c)                               |      |
| I (a) Biliary cirrhosis           | K744 |
| (b) Carcinoma pancreas            | C259 |
| (c)                               |      |

33. Lupus Erythematosus (L930)  
Lupus (L930)

Code M321 (Systemic lupus erythematosus with organ or system involvement):

When reported as causing a disease of the following systems:

- Anemia
- Circulatory (including cardiovascular,  
lymph nodes, spleen)
- Gastrointestinal
- Musculoskeletal
- Respiratory
- Thrombocytopenia
- Urinary

- |                         |      |
|-------------------------|------|
| I (a) Nephritis         | N059 |
| (b) Lupus erythematosus | M321 |
| (c)                     |      |

34. Gout (M109)Code M104 (Secondary gout):

When reported due to:

B200-B24	L100-L109
C880-C959	L120-L449
D45	L510-L569
D550-D599	L578-L589
D751	L930-L932
D758	L945
E168	L951
E740	L981
F100-F102	M100-M109
F109	R75
K700-K769	

I (a) Perforated gastric ulcer	K255
(b) Gout	M104
(c) Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia	C880

35. Polyarthrosis (M159)

Code M153 (Secondary multiple arthrosis):

When reported due to:

A399

B200-B24

E660-E669

G810-G839

M150-M1990

N924

N950-N959

R54

R75

S000-T983

- |                            |      |
|----------------------------|------|
| I (a) Hypostatic pneumonia | J182 |
| (b) Polyarthrosis          | M153 |
| (c) Obesity                | E669 |

Code I(b) secondary multiple arthrosis, M153, since reported due to obesity.

36. Coxarthrosis (M169)

- Code (a) M166 (Coxarthrosis, secondary bilateral):  
(b) M167 (Coxarthrosis, secondary, NEC unilateral):

When reported due to:

A399  
B200-B24  
E660-E669  
G810-G839  
M150-M161  
M166-M1990  
N924  
N950-N959  
R54  
R75

- |                   |      |
|-------------------|------|
| I (a) Pneumonia   | J189 |
| (b) Debility      | R53  |
| (c) Coxarthrosis  | M167 |
| (d) Polyarthrosis | M159 |

Code I(c) secondary coxarthrosis, M167, since reported due to polyarthrosis (M159).

37. Gonarthrosis (M179)

- Code (a) M174 (Secondary gonarthrosis, bilateral):  
 (b) M175 (Secondary gonarthrosis, unilateral):

When reported due to:

A399  
 B200-B24  
 E660-E669  
 G810-G839  
 M150-M171  
 M174-M1990  
 N924  
 N950-N959  
 R54  
 R75

- |                               |      |      |
|-------------------------------|------|------|
| I (a) Pneumonia, gonarthrosis | J189 | M175 |
| (b) Hemiplegia                | G819 |      |
| (c) Old CVA                   | I694 |      |

Code I(a) secondary gonarthrosis, M175, since reported due to hemiplegia.

38. Arthrosis (M199)

Code M192 (Secondary arthrosis):

When reported due to:

A399  
B200-B24  
E660-E669  
G810-G839  
M150-M190  
M192-M1990  
N924  
N950-N959  
R54  
R75

I (a) Pathological fractures	M844
(b) Arthrosis	M192
(c) Senility	R54

Code I(b) secondary arthrosis, M192, since reported due to senility.

39. Kyphosis (M402)Code M401 (Secondary kyphosis):

When reported due to:

A1690	G110-G119	M960-M969
A180	G20-G2000	Q050-Q059
B902	G35-G379	Q760-Q799
B91	G540-G549	Q850
C400-C419	G600-G839	Q870-Q878
C490-C499	G950-G959	Q893-Q999
C795	G970-G979	S000-Y899
D166	M000-M120	
D480	M150-M1990	
E200-E215	M320-M351	
E550-E559	M359-M489	
E890-E899	M800-M949	
I (a) COPD		J449
(b) Kyphosis		M401
(c) Spinal osteoarthritis		M479

Code I(b) secondary kyphosis, M401, since reported due to spinal osteoarthritis.

40. Scoliosis (M419)a. Code M414 (Neuromuscular scoliosis):

When reported due to:

A800-A809	G700-G709
B91	G800-G809
G111	M414

I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
(b) Severe scoliosis	years M414
(c) Polio	years B91

Code I(b) neuromuscular scoliosis, M414, since reported due to polio (B91).

b. Code M415 (secondary scoliosis):

When reported due to:

A1690	G09	M415-M489
A180	G20-G2000	M800-M949
B902	G360-G379	M960-M969
C400-C419	G540-G549	Q050-Q059
C490-C499	G600-G64	Q760-Q799
C795	G950-G959	Q850
D166	G970-G979	Q870-Q878
D480	M000-M120	Q893-Q999
E200-E215	M150-M1990	S000-Y899
E550-E559	M320-M351	
E890-E899	M359-M413	

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Scoliosis	M415
(c) Progressive systemic sclerosis	M340

Code I(b) secondary scoliosis, M415, since reported due to progressive systemic sclerosis.

41. Osteonecrosis (M879)Code M873 (Secondary osteonecrosis):

When reported due to:

A000-A399	D480	M463-M479
A400-A419	D550-D589	M600
A420-B889	H650-H669	M860-M870
B89	J00-J399	M873
B900-B949	L00-L089	M878-M889
B99	M000-M1990	M894
C400-C419	M320-M351	M910-M939
C763	M359	N340-N343
C795	M420-M429	N390
C810-C969	M45461	N700-N768
D160-D169	M462	R75

I (a) Septicemia	A419
(b) Osteonecrosis hip	M873
(c) Infective myositis	M600

Code I(b) secondary osteonecrosis, M873, since reported due to infective myositis (M600).

42. Dysmenorrhea (N946)Code N945 (Secondary dysmenorrhea):

When reported due to:

C530-C55	N800-N809
C798	N840-N841
D060-D069	N850-N889
D073	N945
D250-D269	Q510-Q519
D390	Q528
N710-N739	

I (a) Anemia and gastric ulcer	D649 K259
(b) Menorrhagia with dysmenorrhea	N920 N945
(c) Cancer of endocervix	C530

Code I(b) secondary dysmenorrhea, N945, since reported due to cancer of endocervix (C530).

43. Cesarean Delivery for Inertia Uterus (O622)Cervical Dystocia (O622):Hypotonic Labor (O622):Hypotonic Uterus Dysfunction (O622):Inadequate Uterus Contraction (O622)Uterine Inertia During Labor (O622):Code O621 (Secondary uterine inertia):

When reported due to:

O100-O209	O440-O469
O230-O249	O621
O260-O264	O670-O679
O266-O269	O95
O310	O980-O998
O330-O349	

I (a) Cardiac arrest	O754
(b) Uterine inertia	O621
(c) Diabetes mellitus of pregnancy	O249

Code I(b) secondary uterine inertia, O621, since reported due to diabetes mellitus of pregnancy (O249).

44. Intracranial Nontraumatic Hemorrhage of Fetus and Newborn (P52)

Code P10 (Intracranial laceration and hemorrhage due to birth injury) with the appropriate fourth character:

When reported due to:

P030-P039  
P100-P112  
P119  
P130-P131  
P159

Male, 9 hours

I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage	P101
(b) Fractured skull during birth	P130
(c)	

Code I(a) cerebral hemorrhage due to birth injury, P101, since reported due to a fracture skull occurring during birth.

Female, 2 weeks

I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage	P101
(b) Birth injury	P159
(c)	

Code I(a) cerebral hemorrhage due to birth injury, P101.

---

45. Septal Defect, (atrial), (auricular), (heart), (ventricular), (Q210, Q211, Q212, Q219)

Code I510 (Acquired septal defect) providing there is no indication the defect is congenital:

a. When reported due to:

A000-A09	I400-I519	N990-N999	R500-R509
A181	I700-J80	P000-P049	R53-R54
A200-B89	J82-J989	P100-Q079	R560-R609
B908-E899	K20-K929	Q240-Q249	R634-R635
F100-F199	L89	Q260-Q349	R64
G000-G419	L97	Q380-Q459	R688-R799
G450-G459	L984	Q600-Q799	R826
G500-G729	M000-M1990	Q850-R098	R893
G900-G98	M300-M549	R11	S000-Y899
H650-H839	M800-M959	R160-R18	
I00-I029	N000-N399	R222	
I10-I339	N600-N96	R300-R398	

b. When reported on the same line with:

I110-I119  
I130-I139  
I200-I339  
I400-I519

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Ventricular septal defect	I510
(c) Myocardial infarction	I219

46. Hypoplasia or Dysplasia of Lung NOS (Q336)

Code P280 (Primary atelectasis of newborn):

When reported anywhere on the record with the following codes and not reported due to diaphragmatic hernia in K44.- or in Q790, and there is no indication that the condition was congenital.

A500-A509

B200-B24

P000-P009

P011-P013

P050-P073

P220-P229

P280

P350-P399

P612

R75

I (a) Hypoplasia lung	P280
(b)	
(c)	

II Prematurity	P073
----------------	------

Female, 5 hrs.

I (a) Dysplasia of lung	5 hrs	Q336
(b)		
(c)		

II Hyaline membrane disease	P220
-----------------------------	------

Code Q336, since the duration and age are the same indicating the condition was congenital.

47. Injury (S000-T149)

Code P10-P15 (Birth trauma):

a. When the age of decedent is less than 28 days

**AND**

b. There is no mention of external cause

**AND**

c. Reported due to a condition in P000-P969

Male, 5 days

I (a) Femur fracture P132

(b) Breech delivery P030

Code femur fracture as indexed under Birth, injury, fracture, femur.

48. Fracture (any site) (T142)

Code M844 (Pathological fracture):

a. When reported due to:

A180	D489	M420-M429	M898-M939	T810-T819
A500-A509	E210-E215	M45-M519	M941-M949	T840-T849
A527-A539	E550-E559	M600	M960	T870-T889
A666	E896-E899	M800-M839	M966-M969	
C000-C97	M000-M1990	M843-M851	Q770-Q789	
D160-D169	M320-M351	M854-M889	Q799	
D480	M35	M893-M895	R54	

b. When reported on the same line with:

C40-C41	M80-M81	M88
C795	M83	

**NOTE 1:** If accident box is checked, do not enter an external cause code.

**NOTE 2:** If a fracture qualifies as pathological, all fractures reported of the same site will be coded pathological as well.

I (a) Fracture hip	M844
(b) Osteoarthritis	M199
I (a) Myocardial infarction	I219
(b) ASHD	I251
(c)	
II Fracture of spine due to arthritis causing fall	M844 M139 W19
I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Osteoporosis c fracture spine	M819 M844
I (a) Pneumonitis	J189
(b) Arteriosclerosis	I709
(c) Fracture femur	M844

MOD II

A

Accident	Spontaneous in bed
----------	--------------------

Code fracture of femur as pathological, M844, since the certifier indicated it was spontaneous. Do not enter code for “accident” in checkbox.

**SECTION III**

**Intent of Certifier**

---

I	(a) Aspiration pneumonia	J690
	(b) Left hip fracture	M844
	(c)	
II	Hip fracture, anemia, osteoporosis	M844 D649 M819

Code the hip fracture on (b) and in Part II as pathological, applying instruction b and note 2.

49. Starvation NOS (T730)Code E46 (Malnutrition NOS):

When reported due to:

A000-E649	L89	R75	T360-T659
E670-F509	L97	S010-S099	T800-T889
F530-F539	L984	S110-S199	V010-Y899
F608-F609	M000-M1990	S210-S299	
F680-F73	M300-N459	S310-S399	
F920	N700-N768	T019-T021	
F982-F983	O000-Q079	T029	
F989-G98	Q200-Q824	T041	
I00-J80	Q850-Q999	T058	
J82-J989	R11	T065-T08	
K020-K029	R13	T091-T099	
K040-K069	R54	T141	
K080-K929	R600-R609	T148-T149	
L100-L129	R630	T170-T217	
L510-L539	R633-R634	T270-T329	

I (a) Anemia	D649
(b) Starvation	E46
(c) Cancer of esophagus	C159

Code I(b) E46, malnutrition, since reported due to a neoplasm.

I (a) Starvation	E46
(b) Crushed abdomen	S381
II Auto accident	&V499

Code I(a) E46, malnutrition, since reported due to an internal injury.

General information

Separate categories are provided in ICD-10 for coding malignant primary and secondary neoplasms (C00-C96), carcinoma in situ (D00-D09), benign neoplasms (D10-D36), and neoplasms of uncertain or unknown behavior (D37-D48). Categories and subcategories within these groups identify sites and/or morphological types.

Morphology describes the difference in type and structure of cells or tissues (histology) as seen under the microscope and behavior. The ICD classification of neoplasms consists of several major morphological groups (types) of neoplasms including the following:

- Carcinomas including squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma
- Sarcomas and other soft tissue tumors including mesotheliomas
- Lymphomas including Hodgkin's lymphoma and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma
- Site specific types (types that indicate the site of the primary neoplasm)
- Leukemias
- Other specified morphological groups

The morphological types of neoplasms are listed in ICD-10 following Chapter XX in Volume 1 and also appear in Volume 3. Morphology, behavior, and site must all be considered when coding neoplasms. This may take the form of a reference to the appropriate column in the "Neoplasm" listing in the Index when the morphological type could occur in several organs. For example:

Adenoma, villous (M8261/1) - see Neoplasm, uncertain behavior

Or to a particular part of that listing when the morphological type originates in a particular type of tissue. For example:

Fibromyxoma (M8811/0) - see Neoplasm, connective tissue, benign

The Index may give the code for the site assumed to be most likely when no site is reported in a morphological type. For example:

Adenocarcinoma  
 - pseudomucinous (M8470/3)  
 - - specified site - see Neoplasm, malignant  
 - - unspecified site C56

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

Or the Index may give a code to be used regardless of the reported site when the vast majority of neoplasms of that particular morphological type occur in a particular site. For example:

Nephroma (M8960/3) C64

Always look up the morphological description in the Index before referring to the listing under “Neoplasm” for the site.

The morphological code numbers consist of five characters: the first four identify the histological type of the neoplasm and the fifth, following a slash, indicates its behavior. These morphological codes (M codes) are not used by NCHS for coding purposes.

The behavior of a neoplasm is an indication of how it will act. The following terms describe the behavior of neoplasms:

Benign (nonmalignant)	D10-D36
Uncertain or unknown behavior (undetermined whether benign or malignant)	D37-D48
In-situ (confined to one site)	D00-D09
Malignant, primary site (capable of rapid growth and of spreading to nearby and distant sites)	C00-C76, C80-C96
Malignant secondary (spread from another site; metastases)	C77-C79

Unless it is specifically indexed, code a morphological term ending in “osis” in the same way as the tumor name to which “osis” has been added is coded. For example, code neuroblastomatosis in the same way as neuroblastoma. However, do not code hemangiomatosis that is specifically indexed to a different category in the same way as hemangioma.

All combinations of the order of prefixes in compound morphological terms are not indexed. For example, the term “chondrofibrosarcoma” does not appear in the Index, but “fibrochondrosarcoma” does. Since the two terms have the same prefixes (in a different order), code the chondrofibrosarcoma the same as fibrochondrosarcoma.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

A. Malignant neoplasms (C00-C96)

The categories that have been provided for the classification of malignant neoplasms distinguish between those that are stated or presumed to be primary (originate in) of the particular site or types of tissue involved, those that are stated or presumed to be secondary (deposits, metastases, or spread from a primary elsewhere) of specified sites, and malignant neoplasms without specification of site. These categories are the following:

- C00-C75** Malignant neoplasms, stated or presumed to be primary, of specified sites and different types of tissue, except lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue
- C76** Malignant neoplasms of other and ill-defined sites
- C77-C79** Malignant secondary neoplasm, stated or presumed to be spread from another site, metastases of sites, regardless of morphological type of neoplasm
- C80** Malignant neoplasm of unspecified site (primary) (secondary)
- C81-C96** Malignant neoplasms, stated or presumed to be primary, of lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue

In order to determine the appropriate code for each reported neoplasm, a number of factors must be taken into account including the morphological type of neoplasm and qualifying terms. Assign all malignant neoplasms to the appropriate category for the morphological type of neoplasm, e.g. to the code shown in the Index for the reported term.

**Morphological types** of neoplasm include categories C40-C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70-C72, and C80. Specific morphological types include:

- C40-C41** Malignant neoplasm of bone and articular cartilage of other and unspecified sites

Osteosarcoma  
 Osteochondrosarcoma  
 Osteofibrosarcoma  
 Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Neoplasm bone, malignant”

I (a) Osteosarcoma of leg C402

Code the morphological type “Osteosarcoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, bone of the specified site as cross-referenced.

- C43** Malignant melanoma of skin
- Melanosarcoma  
Melanoblastoma  
Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Melanoma”
- I (a) Melanoma of arm C436
- Based on the note in the Index, code melanoma of arm as indexed under **Melanoma, site classification**.
- I (a) Melanoma of stomach C169
- Melanoma of stomach is not found under Melanoma in the Index. The term should be coded by site under Neoplasm, malignant.
- C44** Other malignant neoplasm of skin
- Basal cell carcinoma  
Sebaceous cell carcinoma  
Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Neoplasm skin, malignant”
- I (a) Sebaceous cell carcinoma nose C443
- Code the morphological type “Sebaceous cell carcinoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, skin of the specified site as cross-referenced.
- C49** Malignant neoplasm of other connective and soft tissue
- Liposarcoma  
Rhabdomyosarcoma  
Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Neoplasm, connective tissue, malignant”
- I (a) Rhabdomyosarcoma abdomen C494
- Code the morphological type “Rhabdomyosarcoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, connective tissue of the specified site as cross-referenced.
- I (a) Sarcoma pancreas C259
- Code the morphological type “Sarcoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, connective tissue of the specified site as cross-referenced. Refer to the “Note” under Neoplasm, malignant, connective tissue concerning sites that do not appear in this list.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

**C80** Malignant neoplasm without specification of site

Cancer

Carcinoma

Malignancy

Malignant tumor or neoplasm

Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Neoplasm, malignant

I (a) Carcinoma of stomach C169

Code the morphological type “Carcinoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, stomach as indexed.

I (a) Cancer prostate C61

Code the morphological type “Cancer” to Neoplasm, malignant, prostate as indexed.

I (a) Adenosarcoma breast C509

Code the morphological type “Adenosarcoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, of the specified site as cross-referenced.

**C81-C96** Malignant neoplasms of lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue

Leukemia

Lymphoma

I (a) Lymphoma of brain C859

Code Lymphoma NOS, C859, as indexed. Neoplasms in C81-C96 are coded by morphological type and not by site.



## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- (2) The specification of other sites as “secondary,” “metastases,” “metastasis,” “spread,” or a statement of “metastasis NOS” or “metastases NOS”

I (a) Carcinoma of breast	C509
(b) Secondaries in brain	C793

Code I(a) primary malignant neoplasm of breast, and I(b) to secondary malignant neoplasm of brain.

I (a) Stomach metastases	C788
(b) Lung cancer	C349

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of stomach and I(b) primary malignant neoplasm of lung.

I (a) Brain metastases	C793
(b) Liver cancer	C229

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of brain and I(b) primary malignant neoplasm of liver.

I (a) Lung cancer with metastases	C349 C80
-----------------------------------	----------

Code (a) primary cancer of lung followed by the NOS code for metastases.

- (3) Morphology indicates a primary malignant neoplasm

If a morphological type implies a primary site, such as hepatoma, consider this as if the word “primary” had been included.

I (a) Hepatoma	C220
----------------	------

Code hepatoma as a primary neoplasm.

I (a) Carcinoma	C80
(b) Pseudomucinous adenocarcinoma	C56

Code I(a) Carcinoma as neoplasm malignant, unspecified site. Code I(b) to primary malignant neoplasm of ovary, since pseudomucinous adenocarcinoma of unspecified site is assigned to the ovary in the Index.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- b. If a morphological type of malignant neoplasm indicating primary is reported in Part I or Part II with a different morphological type of malignant neoplasm that is stated primary, consider both neoplasms to be primary.

I (a) Sarcoma of thigh	C492
II Primary liver carcinoma	C229

Code each neoplasm as indexed. Both I(a) Sarcoma of thigh and Part II Primary liver carcinoma are primary malignant neoplasms.

3. Site specific neoplasms

- a. Certain neoplasms are classified or indexed directly to a specific site. Classify morphological types of neoplasms that appear in the Index with specific codes (site specific neoplasms) e.g. "Hepatocarcinoma (M8170/3) C220," as indexed.

I (a) Renal cell carcinoma	C64
----------------------------	-----

Code renal cell carcinoma as indexed.

- b. If there is a conflict between the code for a site specific neoplasm and the stated site, code the site specific neoplasm as indexed and code the stated site as secondary. Enter the code for the secondary neoplasm on the same line with and immediately following the code for the site specific neoplasm.

I (a) Hepatocarcinoma of brain	C220 C793
--------------------------------	-----------

Code hepatocarcinoma as indexed and code secondary malignant neoplasm of brain as the second entry on I(a).

- c. When a site specific neoplasm is reported due to the same site specific neoplasm, code each as indexed.

I (a) Bronchogenic carcinoma	C349
(b) Bronchogenic carcinoma	C349

Code I(a) and I(b) to bronchogenic carcinoma, as indexed.

4. Other morphological types of neoplasms

If adenocarcinoma, cancer, carcinoma, neoplasm (malignant) or tumor (malignant) of a site, except neoplasms classifiable to C81-C96, are reported due to a morphological type of neoplasm of unspecified site, code the neoplasm on the upper line qualified by the morphological type, and do not enter a code for the morphological type of unspecified site on the lower line if:

a. The morphological type of neoplasm reported on the lower line is C80.

I	(a) Tumor of upper lung	C341
	(b) Carcinoma	

Code the tumor on (a) modified by the morphological type (C80) on (b). Leave line (b) blank.

I	(a) Cancer of bladder	C679
	(b) Papillary carcinoma	

Code the cancer on (a) modified by the morphological type (C80) on (b). Leave line (b) blank.

b. The morphological type of neoplasm of unspecified site on the lower line is classified to the same site as the neoplasm on the upper line.

I	(a) Cancer of brain	C719
	(b) Astrocytoma	

Code the specified site on I(a) modified by the morphological type of unspecified site on I(b) since they are classified to the same site. Leave I(b) blank.

I	(a) Adenocarcinoma of stomach	C169
	(b) Linitis plastica	

Code the specified site on I(a) modified by the morphological type of unspecified site on I(b) since they are classified to the same site. Leave I(b) blank.

c. The morphological type of neoplasm of unspecified site on the lower line is classified according to the site affected, e.g., the malignant neoplasms classifiable to the following categories: C40, C41, C43, C44, C47, C49, C70, C71, and C72. Code the neoplasm on the upper line qualified by the morphological type on the lower line, and do not enter a code for the morphological type of unspecified site on the lower line.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a) Adenocarcinoma of face C433  
 (b) Melanoma

Code melanoma of face on I(a) and leave I(b) blank.

I (a) Carcinoma of leg C492  
 (b) Fibroliposarcoma

Code fibroliposarcoma of leg on I(a) and leave I(b) blank.

5. Independent (primary) sites

The presence of more than one primary neoplasm could be indicated in one of the following ways:

- mention of two different anatomical sites
- or two distinct morphological types (e.g. hypernephroma and intraductal carcinoma)
- or by a mix of a morphological type that implies a specific site, plus a second site.

It is highly unlikely that one primary would be due to another primary malignant neoplasm except for a group of malignant neoplasms of lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue (C81-C96), within which, one form of malignancy may terminate in another (e.g. leukemia may follow non-Hodgkin's lymphoma).

- a. If two or more sites are mentioned in Part I and there is no indication that either site is primary or secondary, code each site as indexed.

I (a) Cancer of stomach 3 months C169  
 (b) Cancer of breast 1 year C509

Code to primary malignant neoplasm of each site mentioned, since it is unlikely that one primary malignant neoplasm would be due to another.

I (a) Carcinoma of colon and rectum C189 C20

Code both sites as primary and enter both on I(a).

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- b. If two or more morphological types of malignant neoplasm occur, one reported due to the other or reported anywhere on the record, code each as indexed.

I (a) Lymphosarcoma of mesentery	C850
II Adenocarcinoma of cecum	C180

Code each as though the other had not been reported since there are two different morphological types of malignant neoplasms.

I (a) Cancer of esophagus	C159
(b) Hodgkin's sarcoma	C817

Code the cancer of the esophagus as primary and code the Hodgkin's sarcoma as indexed. They are different morphological types.

I (a) Leukemia	C959
II Carcinoma of breast	C509

Code each neoplasm as indexed. Two different morphological types are mentioned.

- c. If two or more morphological types of malignant neoplasm occur in lymphoid, hematopoietic or related tissue (C81-C96), code each as indexed. When acute exacerbation of, or blastic crisis (acute) in, chronic leukemia is reported, code both the acute form and chronic form. If stated acute and chronic, code both as indexed.

I (a) Acute lymphocytic leukemia	C910
(b) Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	C859

Code each as indexed since both are morphological types classified within the categories C81-C96.

I (a) Chronic lymphocytic leukemia with blastic crisis	C911 C910
---	-----------

Code both chronic lymphocytic leukemia and acute lymphocytic leukemia.

I (a) Acute exacerbation of chronic lymphocytic leukemia	C910 C911
---	-----------

Code to the acute and chronic form when reported as acute exacerbation of a chronic form of leukemia and code both on the same line.

## Part A

Neoplasms (C00-D48)

---

d. Do not use a neoplasm in a due to position to determine secondary and primary.

- |       |                               |      |
|-------|-------------------------------|------|
| I (a) | Carcinoma of head of pancreas | C250 |
| (b)   | Carcinoma of tail of pancreas | C252 |

Code primary malignant neoplasm of head of pancreas for I(a) and code primary malignant neoplasm of tail of pancreas for I(b).

- |       |                       |      |
|-------|-----------------------|------|
| I (a) | Cancer of stomach     | C169 |
| (b)   | Cancer of gallbladder | C23  |

Code each site primary.

- |       |                       |      |
|-------|-----------------------|------|
| I (a) | Cancer of breast      | C509 |
| (b)   | Cancer of endometrium | C541 |

Code each site primary.

6. Metastases

Metastases is the spread of a primary malignant neoplasm to another site; therefore, metastases of a site is always secondary.

- a. When malignancy NOS or any morphological type classifiable to C80 is reported with metastases of a site on a line, code C80 and the secondary neoplasm.

I (a) Malignancy with metastases of bladder	C80 C791
--	----------

Code malignancy as first entry on I(a) and code secondary bladder neoplasm as the second neoplasm on I(a).

- b. Although malignant cells can metastasize anywhere in the body, certain sites are more common than others and must be treated differently. If one of the common sites of metastases (excluding lung) is qualified by the word “metastatic,” it should be coded as secondary (see other neoplasm instructions). However, if one of these sites appears alone on a death certificate and is not qualified by the word “metastatic,” it should be considered primary.

Common sites of metastases:

Bone	Lymph nodes
Brain	Mediastinum
Central nervous system	Meninges
Diaphragm	Peritoneum
Heart	Pleura
Liver	Retroperitoneum
Lung	Spinal cord
Ill-defined sites (sites classifiable to C76)	

I (a) Cancer of brain	C719
-----------------------	------

Code primary cancer of brain since it is reported alone on the certificate.

■ (1) Special Instruction: Lung

The lung poses special problems in that it is a common site for both metastases and primary malignant neoplasms. Lung should be considered as a common site of metastases whenever it appears in Part I with sites not on this list. If lung is mentioned anywhere on the certificate and the only other sites are on the list of common sites of metastases, consider lung primary. However, when the bronchus or bronchogenic cancer is mentioned, this neoplasm should be considered primary.

I (a) Carcinoma of lung C349

Code primary malignant neoplasm of lung since it is reported alone on the certificate.

I (a) Cancer of bone C795  
(b) Carcinoma of lung C349

Code primary malignant neoplasm of lung on I(b) since bone is on the list of common sites of metastases and lung can, therefore, be assumed to be primary.

I (a) Carcinoma of bronchus C349  
(b) Carcinoma of breast C509

Code primary malignant neoplasm of bronchus on I(a) and primary malignant neoplasm of breast on I(b). Do not code I(a) as secondary malignant neoplasm, because bronchus is excluded from the list of common sites.

■ (2) Special Instruction: Lymph Node

Malignant neoplasm of lymph nodes not specified as primary should be assumed to be secondary.

I (a) Cancer of cervical lymph nodes C770

Code secondary malignant neoplasm of cervical lymph nodes.

7. Multiple sites

- a. If all sites reported (anywhere on certificate) are on the list of common sites of metastases, code to secondary neoplasm of each site of the morphological type involved, unless lung is mentioned, in which case code to (C349) primary malignant neoplasm of lung.

I (a) Cancer of liver	C787
(b) Cancer of abdomen	C798

Code to secondary neoplasm of both sites since both are on the list of common sites of metastases. Abdomen is one of the ill-defined sites included in the C76.- category.

I (a) Malignant carcinoma of pleura and mediastinum	C782 C781
--	-----------

Code secondary malignant neoplasm of pleura and secondary malignant neoplasm of mediastinum on I(a).

I (a) Peritoneal carcinoma	C786
II Liver carcinoma	C787

Code secondary malignant neoplasm of peritoneum on I(a) and secondary malignant neoplasm of liver in Part II.

I (a) Cancer of brain	C793
(b) Cancer of lung	C349

Code I(a) secondary cancer of brain since brain is on the list of common sites. Code I(b) primary cancer of lung because the only other site mentioned is on the list of common sites.

- b. If one or more of the common sites of metastases, excluding lung, is reported and one or more site(s) or one or more morphological type(s) is mentioned on the certificate, none specified as primary, code the common site(s) secondary and the other site(s) or morphological type(s) primary.

I (a) Cancer of stomach	C169
(b) Cancer of liver	C787

Code I(a) primary cancer of stomach and code I(b) secondary cancer of liver since liver is on the list of common sites and stomach is not.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

---

I (a) Liver cancer	C787
(b) Bladder cancer	C679
(c) Colon cancer	C189

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of liver since liver is on the list of common sites of metastases. Code I(b) and I(c) as primary.

I (a) Peritoneal cancer	C786
II Mammary carcinoma	C509

Code I(a) secondary peritoneal cancer since peritoneum is on the list of common sites. Code Part II primary carcinoma of breast.

I (a) Brain carcinoma	C793
II Melanoma of scalp	C434

Code I(a) secondary brain carcinoma since brain is on the list of common sites. Code Part II melanoma of scalp.

**NOTE:** If a malignant neoplasm of lymphatic, hematopoietic, or related tissue (C81-C96) is reported in one part and one of the common sites is mentioned in the other part, code the common site primary.

I (a) Brain cancer	C793
(b) Lymphoma	C859

Code I(a) secondary brain cancer since brain is on the list of common sites and is reported in the same part with a neoplasm indexed to C859.

I (a) Brain cancer	C719
II Lymphoma	C859

Code I(a) primary brain cancer. Brain is on the list of common sites of metastases, but it is reported in one part and a neoplasm indexed to C859 is reported in the other part.

- c. If lung is mentioned in the same part with another site(s), not on the list of common sites, or one or more morphological type(s), code the lung as secondary and the other site(s) primary.

I (a) Lung cancer	C780
(b) Stomach cancer	C169

Code secondary lung cancer on I(a) and code primary stomach cancer on I(b) since both are in the same part.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a) Lung cancer	C780
(b) Leukemia	C959

Code secondary lung cancer on I(a) and code leukemia on I(b) since both are in the same part.

I (a) Bladder carcinoma	C679
II Lung cancer, breast cancer	C780 C509

Code I(a) primary bladder carcinoma and code primary breast cancer in Part II. Code secondary lung cancer in Part II. Lung is in the same part with another site.

- d. If lung is mentioned in one part, and one or more site(s), not on the list of common sites, or one or more morphological type(s) is mentioned in the other part, code the lung as primary and the other site(s) or other morphological type primary.

I (a) Stomach cancer	C169
II Lung cancer	C349

Code primary stomach cancer on I(a) and code primary lung cancer in Part II. Lung is mentioned in one part and the other site is mentioned in the other part.

I (a) Leukemia	C959
II Lung cancer	C349

Code leukemia on I(a) and code primary lung cancer in Part II. Lung is mentioned in one part and the other morphological type is mentioned in the other part.

8. Metastatic neoplasms

The adjective “metastatic” is used in two ways—sometimes meaning a secondary neoplasm from a primary elsewhere and sometimes denoting a primary that has given rise to metastases. Neoplasms qualified as metastatic are **always** malignant, either primary or secondary. In order to avoid confusion, use the following to determine whether to code a metastatic neoplasm as primary or secondary.

- a. Malignant neoplasm described as “from” or “metastatic from” a specified site should be interpreted as primary of that site and all other sites should be coded as secondary unless stated as primary whether in Part I or Part II.

I (a)	Metastatic teratoma from ovary	C80
(b)		C56

Interpret as: I (a) Metastatic teratoma  
(b) Primary ovary teratoma

Then, code I(b) to primary malignant neoplasm of ovary since it states metastatic from ovary. Code I(a) to C80, malignant neoplasm, unspecified site.

I (a)	Metastatic cancer from kidney	C80
(b)		C64

Interpret as: I (a) Metastatic cancer  
(b) Primary kidney cancer

Then, code I(b) to primary malignant neoplasm of kidney since it states metastatic from kidney. Code I(a) to C80, malignant neoplasm, unspecified site.

I (a)	Carcinomatosis	C80
(b)	Metastatic from bowel	C260
II	Carcinoma of rectum	C785

Code I(b) primary neoplasm of bowel. Code the site in Part II as secondary.

- b. Malignant neoplasms of morphological type C80 of unspecified site described “to a site” or “metastatic to a site” should be interpreted as secondary of that site(s).

I (a)	Metastatic carcinoma to the rectum	C785
-------	------------------------------------	------

Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of rectum. The word “to” indicates that the rectum is secondary.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma to lungs and liver C780 C787

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of lungs and liver since the record states “metastatic to.”

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma to lungs and liver C780 C787  
 (b) Bladder carcinoma C679

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of lungs and liver since it states “metastatic to” and code I(b) primary malignant bladder carcinoma.

- c. Malignant neoplasms described as “from a site to a site” should be interpreted as primary of the site stated “from” and secondary of all other sites unless stated primary whether in Part I or Part II

I (a) Metastatic cancer from bowel to liver C787  
 (b) C260

Code I(a) secondary liver neoplasm. Interpret metastatic cancer from bowel to be a statement of primary and code I(b) primary cancer of bowel.

I (a) Metastatic cancer from liver to abdomen C798  
 (b) C229

Code secondary malignant neoplasm of abdomen on I(a) and primary malignant neoplasm of liver on I(b).

I (a) Malignant neoplasm of bone from leg C795  
 (b) C765

Code I(a) secondary bone neoplasm. Interpret metastatic neoplasm of bone from leg to be a statement of primary and code I(b) primary malignant neoplasm of leg.

- d. Malignant neoplasm described as (of) a site to a site should be interpreted as primary of the site preceding “to a site” and all other sites should be coded as secondary unless stated as primary, whether in Part I or Part II.

I (a) Cancer of breast C509  
 (b) Metastatic to mediastinum C781

Code I(a) to primary malignant neoplasm of breast and I(b) to secondary malignant neoplasm of mediastinum since it is reported as “metastatic to.” Enter the codes on the lines where reported.



g. The terms “metastatic” and “metastatic of” should be interpreted as follows:

- (1) If one site is mentioned and this is qualified as metastatic, code to malignant primary of that particular site if the morphological type is C80 and the site is not a common site of metastases, excluding lung.

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of pancreas C259

Code primary malignant neoplasm of pancreas since one site is reported and it is not a common site.

I (a) Metastatic cancer of lung C349

Code to primary malignant neoplasm of lung since no other site is mentioned.

- (2) If no site is reported but the morphological type is qualified as metastatic, code to primary site unspecified of the particular morphological type involved. Do not use “metastatic” to qualify a malignant neoplasm, stated or presumed to be primary, of lymphoid, hematopoietic and related tissue, classifiable to C81-C96 as secondary.

I (a) Metastatic melanoma C439

Code as indexed. Melanoma is a morphological type of neoplasm and is indexed to C439.

I (a) Metastatic Hodgkin’s Disease C819

Code a morphological type of neoplasm that is classified to C81-C96 as indexed regardless of whether qualified as metastatic.

- (3) Site-specific neoplasms reported as metastatic

- (a) When a site specific neoplasm is qualified as metastatic code as indexed.

I (a) Metastatic hypernephroma C64

Code as indexed. Hypernephroma is a site specific neoplasm and indexed to C64.

I (a) Metastatic meningioma C709

Metastatic meningioma is a malignant site specific morphological type of neoplasm. Code as indexed under Meningioma, malignant.

- (b) If there is a conflict between the code for a site specific neoplasm and the stated site, code the site specific neoplasm as indexed and consider the stated site to be qualified as secondary and code accordingly. Enter the code for the secondary site on the same line with and immediately following the code for the site specific neoplasm.

I (a) Metastatic renal cell carcinoma                      C64    C780  
       (b)    of lung

Code the site specific neoplasm, renal cell carcinoma followed by the code for secondary neoplasm of lung.

I (a) Metastatic hepatoma of brain                              C220    C793

Code the site specific neoplasm, hepatoma as indexed followed by the code for secondary brain neoplasm.

- (4) If a single morphological type and a site, other than a common site of metastases are qualified as metastatic, code to the specific category for the morphological type and site involved.

I (a) Metastatic melanoma of arm                                      C436

Code to malignant melanoma of skin of arm (C436), since in this case the ill-defined site of arm is a specific site for melanoma, not a common site of metastases classifiable to C76.

I (a) Metastatic sarcoma of stomach                                      C169

Code as indexed.

- (5) If a single C80 morphological type is qualified as metastatic and the site mentioned is one of the common sites of metastases **except lung**, code to secondary malignant neoplasm of the site mentioned. If the single site is lung, qualified as metastatic, code to primary of lung.

I (a) Metastatic cancer of peritoneum                                      C786

Code to secondary cancer of peritoneum since peritoneum is on the list of common sites of metastases and the morphological type of neoplasm is classified to C80.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part A

### Neoplasms (C00-D48)

---

I (a) Metastatic cancer of lung C349

Code to primary malignant neoplasm of lung, C349, since no other site is mentioned.

- (6) If a single morphological type, other than C80 type, is qualified as metastatic and the site mentioned is one of the common sites of metastases **except lung**, code the unspecified site for the morphological type. Code the common site as secondary and as a second entry on the same line.

I (a) Metastatic rhabdomyosarcoma of C499 C771  
(b) hilar lymph nodes

Code to unspecified site for rhabdomyosarcoma and code the lymph nodes as secondary.

I (a) Metastatic sarcoma of lung C349

Code to malignant neoplasm of lung since lung is not considered a common site for this instruction.

**Exception:** Metastatic mesothelioma or Kaposi's sarcoma.

1. If site IS indexed under "Mesothelioma or Kaposi's sarcoma," assign that code.

I (a) Metastatic mesothelioma of liver C457

Code site as indexed under mesothelioma.

I (a) Metastatic mesothelioma of mesentery C451

Code as indexed under mesothelioma.

2. If site is NOT indexed under "Mesothelioma or Kaposi's sarcoma" and site reported is NOT a common site of metastases - assign code for specified site NEC.

I (a) Metastatic mesothelioma of kidney C457

Code mesothelioma specified site NEC. Kidney is not a common site of metastases.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

3. If site is NOT indexed under “Mesothelioma or Kaposi’s sarcoma” and site reported IS a common site of metastases - assign code for unspecified site and secondary code for common site.

I (a)	Metastatic mesothelioma of	C459	C779
	(b) lymph nodes		

Code the morphological type as the first entry followed by the code for the site not indexed under mesothelioma.

I (a)	Metastatic Kaposi’s of brain	C469	C793
-------	------------------------------	------	------

Code the morphological type and code brain as secondary. Brain is on the list of common sites of metastases.

I (a)	Kaposi’s sarcoma of brain	C467
-------	---------------------------	------

This instruction does not apply since Kaposi’s sarcoma is not qualified as metastatic. Code Kaposi’s sarcoma, specified site, since not qualified as metastatic.

- (7) When morphological types of neoplasms classifiable to C40, C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70, C71, and C72 without mention of a site are jointly reported with the same morphological type of neoplasm with mention of a site, code the morphological type of unspecified site as indexed.

I (a)	Metastatic rhabdomyosarcoma	C499
	(b) Rhabdomyosarcoma kidney	C64

Code to unspecified site of rhabdomyosarcoma on I(a) and code rhabdomyosarcoma kidney as indexed.

h. More than one malignant neoplasm qualified as metastatic.

(1) If two or more sites with a morphology of C80, not on the list of common sites of metastases, are reported and all are qualified as “metastatic” code as follows:

(a) If the sites are in the same anatomical system code each site as primary. Use the list below to determine if the sites are in the same organ system.

C150-C269	Digestive system
C300-C399	Respiratory system
C400-C419	Bone and articular cartilage of limbs, other, and unspecified sites
C490-C499	Connective and soft tissue
C510-C579	Female genital organ
C600-C639	Male genital organ
C64-C689	Urinary organ
C690-C699	Eye and adnexa
C700-C729	Central nervous system
C73 -C759	Thyroid and other endocrine glands

I (a)	Metastatic stomach carcinoma	C169
(b)	Metastatic pancreas carcinoma	C259

Code both sites primary since they are a C80 morphological type, are in the same organ system, and neither is on the list of common sites of metastases.

(b) If the sites are in different anatomical systems, code each as secondary.

I (a)	Metastatic carcinoma of stomach	C788
(b)	Metastatic carcinoma of bladder	C791

Code secondary neoplasm of each site listed. Stomach and bladder are in two different anatomical systems.

(2) If two or more morphological types are qualified as metastatic, code to malignant neoplasms, each independent of the other.

I (a)	Metastatic adenocarcinoma of bowel	C260
(b)	Metastatic sarcoma of uterus	C55

Code to primary neoplasm of each site since adenocarcinoma and sarcoma are of different morphological types.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

---

I (a) Metastatic cancer of pleura	C782
(b) Metastatic melanoma of back	C435

Code I(a) to secondary neoplasm of pleura since pleura is on the list of common sites of metastases. Code I(b) to melanoma of back (C435) from the site list under melanoma.

- (3) If a morphology implying site and an independent anatomical site are both qualified as metastatic, code to secondary malignant neoplasm of each site.

I (a) Metastatic colonic and renal cell carcinoma	C785 C790
---	-----------

Code both sites as secondary.

- (4) If more than one site with a morphology of C80 is mentioned code as follows:

- (a) If all but one site is qualified as metastatic and/or appear on the list of common sites of metastases, including lung, code to primary neoplasm of the site that is not qualified as metastatic or not on the list of common sites of metastases, irrespective of the order of entry or whether it is in Part I or Part II. Code all other sites as secondary.

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of stomach	C788
(b) Carcinoma of gallbladder	C23
(c) Metastatic carcinoma of colon	C785

Code primary carcinoma of gallbladder since it is the only site not specified as metastatic. Assign a primary code on I(b) and secondary codes on I(a) and I(c).

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of stomach	C788
(b) Metastatic carcinoma of lung	C780
II Carcinoma of colon	C189

Code I(a) and I(b) secondary and code primary carcinoma of colon in Part II since this is the only malignant neoplasm not qualified as metastatic, even though it is in Part II.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- |                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Cancer of kidney            | C64  |
| (b) Metastatic cancer of prostate | C798 |

Code I(a) primary cancer of kidney since the only other site on the record is qualified as metastatic. Code I(b) secondary cancer of prostate since it is qualified as metastatic.

- |                                  |      |
|----------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Metastatic cancer of ovary | C796 |
| II Cancer of colon               | C189 |

Code I(a) secondary and code part II primary. There are two sites reported and one is qualified as metastatic while the second site is not reported metastatic.

- (b) If all sites are qualified as metastatic and/or are on the list of common sites of metastases, including lung, code to secondary malignant neoplasm of all reported sites.

- |                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Metastatic cancer of stomach | C788 |
| (b) Metastatic cancer of breast    | C798 |
| (c) Metastatic cancer of lung      | C780 |

Code secondary neoplasm of each site listed. All sites are reported as metastatic.

- |                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of ovary | C796 |
| (b) Carcinoma of lung               | C780 |
| (c) Metastatic pancreatic carcinoma | C788 |

Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of each site. Lung is on the list of common sites of metastases and ovary and pancreas are both reported as metastatic.

- |                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Metastatic stomach cancer | C788 |
| (b) Lung cancer                 | C780 |

Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of each site. Lung is on the list of common sites of metastases and stomach cancer is reported as metastatic.

- |                            |      |
|----------------------------|------|
| I (a) Carcinoma of spine   | C795 |
| (b) Metastatic lung cancer | C780 |

Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of each site. Spine is on the list of common sites of metastases and lung is reported as metastatic.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

---

I (a)	Metastatic carcinoma of abdomen	C798
(b)	Metastatic carcinoma of colon	C785

Code both sites as secondary since both are qualified as metastatic.

I (a)	Metastatic brain carcinoma	C793
(b)	Metastatic lung carcinoma	C780

Code both sites as secondary malignant neoplasm since both are qualified as metastatic.

- (5) When a metastatic malignant neoplasm is reported on a record with a malignant neoplasm of the same site whether stated as metastatic or not, code both primary.

I (a)	Metastatic gastric carcinoma	C169
(b)	Gastric carcinoma	C169

Code primary gastric carcinoma on I(a) and code primary gastric carcinoma on I(b).

- (6) If two or more sites with a morphology of C40, C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70, C71, and C72 are reported and all sites are qualified as metastatic, add an additional code to identify the morphological type of neoplasm. Code the morphological type of neoplasm to the unspecified site category, i.e., to "9." Enter this code on the same line with and preceding the code for the first mentioned secondary site.

I (a)	Metastatic leiomyosarcoma arm, stomach and brain	C499	C798	C788	C793
-------	---	------	------	------	------

Code leiomyosarcoma, the morphological type of neoplasm, to C499 and code the reported sites as secondary neoplasms since all three sites are qualified as metastatic.

I (a)	Metastatic sarcoma of stomach and small intestine	C499	C788	C784
-------	--	------	------	------

Code the sarcoma, the morphological type of neoplasm, to C499 and code the reported sites as secondary neoplasms.



## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- |   |                            |      |      |
|---|----------------------------|------|------|
| I | (a) Generalized metastases | C80  |      |
|   | (b) Melanoma of back       | C439 | C798 |
|   | (c) Primary site unknown   |      |      |

Code I(b) melanoma, unspecified site, followed by the code for the secondary site reported.

- c. When “primary site unknown,” or its equivalent, appears on the certificate with neoplasms classified to morphological type C80, (classifiable to C00-C76), code all reported sites as secondary and precede the first neoplasm code with C80.

- |   |                                  |     |      |
|---|----------------------------------|-----|------|
| I | (a) Secondary carcinoma of liver | C80 | C787 |
|   | (b) Primary site unknown         |     |      |

Code secondary liver carcinoma preceded with C80.

- |   |                          |     |      |
|---|--------------------------|-----|------|
| I | (a) Carcinoma of stomach | C80 | C788 |
|   | (b) Primary site unknown |     |      |

Code secondary stomach carcinoma preceded with C80.

- |   |                                       |     |      |
|---|---------------------------------------|-----|------|
| I | (a) Carcinoma of stomach              | C80 | C788 |
|   | (b) Primary site of carcinoma unknown | C80 |      |

Code I(a) secondary carcinoma of stomach preceded with C80. Code I(b) C80 for carcinoma since the term carcinoma is repeated.

- |   |                                    |     |      |      |      |
|---|------------------------------------|-----|------|------|------|
| I | (a) Cancer of intestines, stomach, | C80 | C785 | C788 | C798 |
|   | (b) and abdomen                    |     |      |      |      |
|   | (c) Unknown primary                |     |      |      |      |

Code all sites as secondary; precede the first code with C80.

#### 10. Implication of malignancy

Mention on the certificate that a neoplasm has produced metastases (secondaries) means it must be coded as malignant, even though this neoplasm without mention of metastases would be classified to some other section of Chapter II.

Code neoplasms indexed to D00-D09 (in situ neoplasms), D10-D36 (benign neoplasms), or D37-D48 (neoplasms of uncertain or unknown behavior) to a primary malignant neoplasm category in C00-C76 if reported on the record with the following conditions:

## a. Metastases NOS and metastases of a site

I (a) Breast tumor with metastases	C509 C80
------------------------------------	----------

Code I(a) to primary malignant neoplasm of breast and code metastases NOS. Code breast tumor as malignant neoplasm of breast since it is reported with metastases NOS.

I (a) Brain metastasis	C793
(b) Lung tumor	C349

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of brain and I(b) primary malignant neoplasm of lung since the lung tumor is reported with metastases of a site.

## b. Any neoplasm indexed to C77-C79 in Volume III

I (a) Lymph node cancer	C779
(b) Carcinoma in situ of breast	C509

Code the carcinoma in situ of breast as primary malignant neoplasm of breast since it is reported with a neoplasm that is indexed to C779. Malignant neoplasm of lymph node is indexed to secondary neoplasm.

## c. A common site of metastases (excluding lung) qualified by the word "metastatic"

I (a) Metastatic liver cancer	C787
(b) Small intestine tumor	C179

Code I(a) as secondary neoplasm of liver and code primary malignant neoplasm of small intestine on I(b), since the small intestine tumor is reported with a common site of metastases qualified by the word "metastatic."

## d. If a, b, or c do not apply, code the neoplasm in D00-D09, D10-D36, D37-D48 as indexed.

11. Sites with prefixes or imprecise definitions

Neoplasms of sites prefixed by "peri," "para," "supra," "infra," etc. or described as in the "area" or "region" of a site, unless these terms are specifically indexed, should be coded as follows: for morphological types classifiable to one of the categories C40, C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70, C71, and C72, code to the appropriate subdivision of that category; otherwise, code to the appropriate subdivision of C76 (other and ill-defined sites).

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part A

### Neoplasms (C00-D48)

---

I (a) Fibrosarcoma in the region of the leg C492

Code I(a) fibrosarcoma in the region of the leg to the appropriate subdivision of the category, malignant neoplasm of connective and soft tissue of lower limb.

I (a) Carcinoma in lung area C761

Since the morphological type of the term “carcinoma” is C80, code I(a), carcinoma in lung area, to the appropriate subdivision of C76 (other and ill-defined sites).

#### 12. Malignant neoplasms described with “either/or”

Malignant neoplasms of more than one site described as “or” and both sites are classified to the same anatomical system, code the residual category for the system. If the sites are in different systems, and are in the same morphological category, code to the residual category for the morphological type.

I (a) Cancer of kidney or bladder C689

Code C689, malignant neoplasm of other and unspecified urinary organs.

I (a) Cancer of gallbladder or kidney C80

Code to C80, malignant neoplasm without specification of site since there is more than one site qualified by the statement “or” and the sites are in different systems.

I (a) Osteosarcoma of lumbar vertebrae C419  
(b) or sacrum

Code to malignant neoplasm of bone unspecified (C419). Both sites separated by the “or” are indexed to bone.

#### 13. Mass or lesion with malignant neoplasms

When mass or lesion is reported with malignant neoplasms, code mass or lesion as indexed.

I (a) Lung mass R91  
(b) Carcinomatosis C80

Code mass as indexed. Do not consider as malignant mass.

I (a) Metastatic lung carcinoma C349  
II Lung lesion J984

Code lung lesion as indexed.

## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

B. Rheumatic heart diseases1. Heart diseases considered to be described as rheumatic

- a. When rheumatic fever (I00) or any heart disease that is specified as rheumatic is reported anywhere on the death certificate, consider conditions listed in categories I300-I319, I339, I340-I38, I400-I409, I429, and I514-I519 to be described as rheumatic unless there is indication they were due to a nonrheumatic cause.

I	(a) Myocarditis	I090
	(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I099

Consider “myocarditis” to be described as “rheumatic” since reported with a heart disease specified as rheumatic.

I	(a) Cardiac tamponade	I092
	(b) Rheumatic endocarditis	I091
	(c)	

Consider “cardiac tamponade” to be described as “rheumatic” since reported with a heart disease specified as rheumatic.

- b. When rheumatic fever and a heart disease are jointly reported, enter a separate code for the rheumatic fever only when it is not used to qualify a heart disease as rheumatic. This applies whether or not the heart disease is stated or classified as rheumatic.

I	(a) Heart disease	I099
	(b) Rheumatic fever	

Consider “heart disease” to be described as “rheumatic.” Do not enter a separate code for rheumatic fever since it is used to qualify the heart disease as rheumatic.

I	(a) Rheumatic heart disease	I099
	(b) Rheumatic fever	

Code “rheumatic heart disease” as indexed. Do not enter a separate code for rheumatic fever since the heart disease is qualified as rheumatic.

I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
	(b) Rheumatic fever	I00

Cardiac arrest is not one of the conditions considered to be described as rheumatic when reported with rheumatic fever. Code each condition as indexed.

## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

- c. When a condition listed in category I50 is indicated to be due to rheumatic fever and there is no mention of another heart disease that is classifiable as rheumatic, consider the condition in I50 to be described as rheumatic.

I (a)	Heart failure	I099
	(b) Rheumatic fever	

Since there is no other heart disease classified as rheumatic, use the rheumatic fever to qualify the heart disease on I(a) as rheumatic.

I (a)	Heart failure	I509
	(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I099

Since there is a heart disease qualified as rheumatic reported on the record, code heart failure, I509.

2. Distinguishing between active and chronic rheumatic heart disease

Rheumatic heart diseases are classifiable to I010-I019, Rheumatic fever with heart involvement, or to I050-I099, Chronic rheumatic heart diseases, depending upon whether the rheumatic process was active or inactive at the time of death.

- a. When rheumatic fever or any rheumatic heart disease is stated to be active, recurrent, or recrudescing, code all rheumatic heart diseases as active. Conversely, code all rheumatic heart diseases as inactive if rheumatic fever or any rheumatic heart disease is stated to be inactive.

I (a)	Endocarditis	I011
	(b) Active rheumatic fever	

Code I(a), active rheumatic endocarditis since the rheumatic fever is stated as active. Leave I(b) blank.

I (a)	Heart failure	I509
	(b) Inactive rheumatic heart disease	I099
	(c)	

Code I(a) as indexed since another heart classified as rheumatic is reported. Code I(b) as indexed since stated as inactive.

## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

b. When there is no statement of active, recurrent, recrudescing, or inactive, code all heart diseases that are stated to be rheumatic or that are considered to be described as rheumatic as active if any of the following instructions apply:

(1) The interval between onset of rheumatic fever and death was less than one year.

I (a) Endocarditis - 6 months	I011
(b) Rheumatic fever - 9 months	

(2) One or more of these heart diseases (listed in Section IV, Part B, 1, a) is stated to be acute or subacute.

**NOTE:** This does not mean rheumatic fever stated to be acute or subacute.

I (a) Acute myocarditis	I012
(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I019

I (a) Rheumatic heart disease	I099
(b) Acute rheumatic fever	

(3) One of these heart diseases is pericarditis.

I (a) Pericarditis	I010
(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I019

(4) At least one of these heart diseases is “carditis,” “endocarditis” (any valve), “heart disease,” “myocarditis,” or “pancarditis” with a stated duration of less than one year.

I (a) Endocarditis - 9 months	I011
(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I019

(5) At least one of these heart diseases is “carditis,” “endocarditis” (any valve), “heart disease,” “myocarditis,” or “pancarditis” without a duration and the age of the decedent was less than 15 years.

Age: 10 years

I (a) Rheumatic heart disease	I019
(b) Rheumatic fever	

## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

- c. In the absence of the previous mentioned indications of an active rheumatic process, consider all heart diseases that are stated to be rheumatic or that are considered to be described as rheumatic as inactive and code to categories I050-I099.

Age: 75 years

- |                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Rheumatic heart disease | I099 |
| (b) Rheumatic fever           |      |

Code I(a) as indexed, there is no indication the rheumatic process was active. Leave line I(b) blank.

3. Valvular diseases jointly reported

- a. When diseases of the mitral, aortic, and tricuspid valves, not qualified as rheumatic, are jointly reported, whether on the same line or on separate lines, code the disease of all valves as rheumatic unless there is indication to the contrary.

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| I (a) Mitral insufficiency and aortic stenosis | I051 I060 |
| (b)  |           |

Code both valvular diseases as rheumatic since there is no indication to the contrary.

- |                              |           |
|------------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Aortic insufficiency   | I061      |
| (b) Mitral endocarditis with | I059 I051 |
| (c) mitral insufficiency     |           |

Code the diseases of both valves as rheumatic since there is no indication to the contrary.

- |                                |                |
|--------------------------------|----------------|
| I (a) Mitral endocarditis      | I059 I051 I050 |
| (b) insufficiency and stenosis |                |
| (c) Aortic endocarditis        | I069           |

Code the diseases of both valves as rheumatic since there is no indication to the contrary.

- |                            |               |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| I (a) Mitral valve disease | I059 I051 I48 |
| (b) with insufficiency and |               |
| (c) atrial fibrillation    |               |
| II Aortic stenosis         | I060          |

Code the diseases of both valves as rheumatic since there is no indication to the contrary.



## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

- a. When valvular heart disease (I050-I079, I089 and I090) not stated to be rheumatic is reported due to:

A1690	C73-C759	E802	J00
A188	C790-C791	E804-E806	J020
A38	C797-C798	E840-E859	J030
A399	C889	E880-E889	J040-J042
A500-A549	D300-D301	F110-F169	J069
B200-B24	D309	F180-F199	M100-M109
B376	D34-D359	I10-I139	M300-M359
B379	D440-D45	I250-I259	N000-N289
B560-B575	E02-E0390	I330-I38	N340-N399
B908	E050-E349	I424	Q200-Q289
B909	E65-E678	I511	Q870-Q999
B948	E760-E769	I514-I5150	R75
C64-C65	E790-E799	I700-I710	

**Code** nonrheumatic valvular disease (I340-I38) with appropriate fourth character.

I (a) Mitral stenosis and aortic stenosis	I342	I350
(b) Hypertension	I10	

Code I(a) as separate one-term entities to nonrheumatic mitral and aortic stenosis since they are reported “due to” a nonrheumatic condition.

I (a) Mitral insufficiency	I340	
(b) Goodpasture’s syndrome & RHD	M310	I099

Code I(a) to nonrheumatic mitral insufficiency since it is reported “due to” a nonrheumatic condition. Apply this instruction even though rheumatic heart disease is entered as the second entry on I(b).

## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

- b. Consider diseases of the aortic, mitral, and tricuspid valves to be nonrheumatic if they are reported on the same line due to a nonrheumatic cause in the previous list. Similarly, consider diseases of these three valves to be nonrheumatic if any of them are reported due to the other and that one, in turn, is reported due to a nonrheumatic cause in the previous list.

I (a) Mitral disease	I349
(b) Aortic stenosis	I350
(c) Arteriosclerosis	I709

Classify both valvular diseases as nonrheumatic. The mitral disease is reported due to the aortic disease which is, in turn, reported due to a nonrheumatic cause.

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Mitral stenosis	I342
(c) Arteriosclerosis	I709

Code the mitral stenosis as nonrheumatic since the certifier indicated it was due to a nonrheumatic cause.

I (a) Aortic and mitral insufficiency	I351 I340
(b) Subacute bacterial endocarditis	I330

Code the valvular diseases as nonrheumatic since they are reported due to a nonrheumatic cause.

C. Pregnancy, childbirth, and the puerperium (O00-O99)1. General information

Conditions classifiable to categories O00-O99 are limited to deaths of females of childbearing age. Some of the maternal conditions are also the cause of death in newborn infants. Always refer to the age and sex of the decedent before coding a condition to O00-O99.

Obstetric deaths are classified according to time elapsed between the obstetric event and the death of the woman:

- O95 Obstetric death of unspecified cause
- O96 Death from any obstetric cause occurring more than 42 days but less than one year after delivery
- O97 Death from sequela of direct obstetric causes (death occurring one year or more after delivery)

The standard certificate of death contains a separate item regarding pregnancy. Any positive response to one of the following items should be taken into consideration when coding pregnancy related deaths:

- Pregnant at time of death
- Not pregnant, but pregnant within 42 days of death
- Not pregnant, but pregnant 43 days to 1 year before death

Consider the pregnancy to have terminated 42 days or less prior to death unless a specific length of time is written in by the certifier. Take into consideration the length of time elapsed between pregnancy and death if reported as more than 42 days.

Maternal deaths are subdivided into two groups:

Direct obstetric deaths (O00-O97): those resulting from obstetric complications of the pregnant state (pregnancy, labor and puerperium), from interventions, omissions, incorrect treatment, or from a chain of events resulting from any of the above.

Indirect obstetric deaths (O98-O99): those resulting from previous existing disease or disease that developed during pregnancy and which was not due to direct obstetric causes, but which was aggravated by physiologic effects of pregnancy.

When coding pregnancies, code any direct obstetric cause to O00-O97 and any indirect obstetric cause to O98-O99.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part C

### Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)

---

#### 2. Pregnancy or childbirth without mention of complication

- a. Do not assign a separate code for “pregnancy” or “delivery” if any other condition is reported other than HIV infection (B200-B24) and/or nature of injuries and external causes (S000-Y899).

When pregnancy or delivery is the only entry on the certificate. Apply the following instructions:

- (1) Code to category O95 if death occurred 42 days or less after termination of pregnancy or when there is no indication of when the pregnancy terminated.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Pregnancy O95

Code “pregnancy” to Pregnancy, death from (O95) since it is the only entry on the certificate.

- (2) Code to category O96 if death resulted from direct or indirect obstetric causes that occurred more than 42 days but less than one year after termination of the pregnancy.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Childbirth 3 months O96

Code childbirth to death from any obstetric cause occurring more than 42 days but less than one year after delivery.

- (3) Code to category O97 if death occurred 1 year or more after termination of pregnancy.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Pregnancy 1 year O97

Code to death from sequela of a direct obstetric cause.

**SECTION IV**

**Classification of Certain ICD Categories**

**Part C**

**Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)**

---

3. Pregnancy with abortive outcome (O000-O089)

- a. Code all complications of conditions listed in categories O000-O029 to the appropriate subcategory of O08 and also code O000-O029 as indexed. To determine the appropriate subcategory for O08, refer to the Index under Abortion, complicated by and select appropriate fourth character from last column.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Septicemia O080  
(b) Tubal pregnancy O001

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, septicemia (O080) and I(b) Pregnancy, tubal (O001).

Female, 20 years  
I (a) Shock O083  
(b) Ectopic pregnancy O009

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, shock (O083) and I(b) Ectopic, pregnancy (O009).

- b. Code all complications of conditions listed in categories O03-O07 to the appropriate subcategory of O08 and also code O03-O07 with fourth character “9.” To determine the appropriate subcategory for O08, refer to the Index under Abortion, complicated by and select appropriate fourth character from last column.

Female, 22 years  
I (a) Pulmonary embolism O082  
(b) Spontaneous abortion O039

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, pulmonary embolism (O082) and I(b) Abortion, spontaneous (O039).

## Part C

## Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)

c. When conditions in categories O00-O07 are reported in Part I or Part II of the death certificate with:

- (1) a direct obstetric complication classifiable to category O08, code the complication to category O08 with the appropriate fourth character. Also code O00-O02 as indexed or O03-O07 with fourth character "9."

Female, 31 years

I (a) Cardiac arrest	O088
(b) Abortion	O069

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, cardiac arrest, a direct obstetric complication and I(b) Abortion NOS.

- (2) an indirect obstetric complication classifiable to categories O98-O99, code the O98-O99. Also code the O00-O02 as indexed or O03-O07 with fourth character "9."

Female, 25 years

I (a) Abortion	O069
II Rheumatic heart disease	O994

Code I(a) Abortion NOS (O069). Code Pregnancy, complicated by rheumatic heart disease (O994), an indirect obstetric cause.

- (3) both a direct and an indirect obstetric complication, code the direct complications to O08 with the appropriate fourth character and the indirect complications to O98-O99. Also code the O00-O02 as indexed or O03-O07 with fourth character "9."

Female, 33 years

I (a) Renal failure	O084
(b) Abortion	O069
II Anemia	O990

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, renal failure. Direct complications of abortions are classified to category O08 with the appropriate fourth character. Code I(b) Abortion NOS. Code Part II Pregnancy, complicated by, anemia, an indirect obstetric complication.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part C

### Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)

---

#### 4. Other complications of pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium (O00-O99)

- a. If death occurred more than 42 days but less than 1 year after termination of pregnancy, code all direct and indirect obstetric complications to O96.

Female, 28 years

I (a) Cardiomyopathy O96  
(b) Childbirth 3 months

Code cardiomyopathy as a direct obstetric cause occurring more than 42 days but less than 1 year after childbirth.

Female, 28 years

I (a) Intracerebral hemorrhage O96  
(b) Childbirth 3 months

Code intracerebral hemorrhage as an indirect obstetric cause occurring more than 42 days but less than 1 year after childbirth.

- b. If death occurred 1 year or more after termination of pregnancy, code any direct obstetric cause to category O97. If only indirect obstetric causes are reported, code all reported conditions as though the maternal condition had not been reported unless the maternal condition modifies the coding. In the latter case, take the maternal condition into account when assigning the code for the other reported condition, but **do not** code O00-O99.

Female, 28 years

I (a) Cardiomyopathy O97  
(b) Childbirth 1 year

Code to O97, Death from sequela of direct obstetric causes. Cardiomyopathy is a direct obstetric cause. **Do not** enter a code on I(b) for childbirth.

Female, 28 years

I (a) Intracerebral hemorrhage I619  
(b) Childbirth 1 year

Code to I619, the appropriate category outside Chapter XV. Intracerebral hemorrhage is an indirect obstetric cause. **Do not** enter a code on I(b) for childbirth.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part C

### Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)

---

- c. Code all complications of pregnancy, childbirth, and the puerperium to categories O00-O75, O85-O92, O96-O99. When delivery is mentioned on the certificate, consider complications to be of delivery unless otherwise specified.
- (1) When both direct and indirect obstetric causes are reported on the same certificate code as indexed to appropriate code in Chapter XV.
  - (2) When a complication is reported and not indexed to a direct or indirect obstetric code, assign the complication to O98-O99 with the appropriate fourth character. Refer to Volume I for correct code assignment.

Female, 35 years

I (a) Thrombosis	1 hr	O229
(b) Pregnancy	8 mos	
II Obesity		O992

Code I(a) to Pregnancy, complicated by, thrombosis. Do not enter a code on I(b) for pregnancy. Code Part II to Pregnancy, complicated by, endocrine diseases NEC as indexed. Obesity is an endocrine disorder.

Female, 29 years

I (a) Acute anemia		O990
(b) Massive postpartum hemorrhage		O721
(c) Delivered liveborn		

Code I(a) to Anemia, complicating pregnancy, childbirth or the puerperium, an indirect obstetric cause. Code I(b) to Hemorrhage, postpartum, a direct obstetric cause. **Do not** enter a code on I(c) for delivery NOS.

Female, 21 years

I (a) Gram negative sepsis		O988
(b) Congenital anomalies of ureters		O998
II 30 weeks pregnant		

Code I(a) to Pregnancy, complicated by, septicemia, an indirect obstetric cause. Code I(b) to Pregnancy, complicated by, congenital malformation, an indirect obstetric cause. **Do not** enter a code in Part II for pregnancy.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part C

### Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)

---

Female, 28 years

I (a) Aspiration pneumonia                      O995  
      (b) Delivery

II Rubella in first trimester                      O985

Code the indirect causes, aspiration pneumonia and rubella to the appropriate code in Chapter XV. Do not enter a code for delivery on I(b).

5. Delivery reported with anesthetic death or anesthesia

- a. When delivery (normal) NOS is reported with anesthetic death, code O748 only. When reported with anesthesia, code O749 only.

Female, 29 years

I (a) Anesthetic death                              O748  
      (b) Delivery

Code I(a) to O748, other complications of anesthesia during labor and delivery. Do not enter code on I(b) for delivery.

- b. When anesthetic death is reported with a complication(s) of delivery or puerperium, code O748 and the code(s) for complication(s) of pregnancy, delivery, or puerperium.

Female, 26 years

I (a) Anesthetic death                              O748  
      (b) Obstructed labor                              O669

Code Delivery, complicated by, anesthetic death on I(a). Code I(b) as indexed.

- c. When anesthesia is reported with a complication(s) of delivery or puerperium, code O749 and the code(s) for complication(s) of pregnancy, delivery, or the puerperium.

Female, 28 years

I (a) Prolonged labor                              O639  
      (b) Anesthesia - delivery                      O749

Code prolonged labor as a complication of delivery. Code “anesthesia-delivery” to O749.

**SECTION IV****Classification of Certain ICD Categories****Part C****Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)**

---

Female, 34 years

I (a) Cardiac arrest	O742
(b) Anesthesia	O749
(c) Obstructive labor	O669

Code I(a) cardiac arrest as a complication of anesthesia. Code the anesthesia on I(b) to O749. Code I(c) as indexed.

6. Operative delivery

- Code an operative delivery such as cesarean section or hysterectomy to O759.
- Code reported complications of the operative delivery to complications of obstetric surgery (O754).
- Code conditions reported due to complications of operative delivery as indexed under complication of delivery and/or the puerperium.

Female, 18 years

I (a) Cardiac arrest	O742
(b) Anesthesia during C-section	O749
(c) Premature separation of placenta	O759
(d)	O459

Code I(a) cardiac arrest as a complication of anesthesia. Code O749 for the anesthesia. There is no complication of the C-section; therefore, code the C-section to O759. Code premature separation of placenta as indexed on line (d).

Female, 27 years

I (a) Pulmonary embolism	O882
(b) Pelvic thrombosis	O754
(c) C-section delivery	O759

Code I(a) Puerperal, embolism (pulmonary). Code I(b) as a complication of the operative delivery. Code I(c) Delivery, cesarean, as indexed.

Female, 39 years

I (a) Pneumonia	O995
(b) Peritoneal hemorrhage	O754
(c) Cesarean section delivery	O759

Code I(a) O995, an indirect obstetric cause. Pneumonia is reported due to the complication and coded as complicating delivery. Code I(b) as a complication of the operative delivery. Code I(c) Delivery, cesarean, as indexed.

**SECTION IV**

**Classification of Certain ICD Categories**

**Part C**

**Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)**

---

Female, 30 years

I (a)	Pneumonia	24 hr	O995
(b)	Pulmonary embolism	3 days	O754
II			O759

Operation Block: C-section

Code I(a) an indirect obstetric cause. Code I(b) as a complication of the operative delivery reported in Part II. Code Part II cesarean section as indexed.

Female, 28 years

I (a)	Pneumonia	O754
(b)	C-section	O759
II		O759 O321

Operation Block: C-section for breech presentation

Code I(a) as a complication of the operative delivery. Code cesarean section on I(b) as indexed. Code cesarean section and breech presentation as indexed in Part II.

D. Congenital conditions

1. The Classification does not provide congenital and acquired codes for all conditions. When no provision is made for a distinction, disregard the statement of congenital or acquired and code the NOS code.

Female, 45 years

I (a)	Patent ductus arteriosus - acquired	Q250
(b)	Pneumonia	J189

Code I(a) to Q250 since patent ductus arteriosus does not have an acquired code.

Male, 33 years

I (a)	Gastric hemorrhage	K922
(b)	Gastric ulcer - congenital	K259

Code I(b) to K259 since gastric ulcer does not have a congenital code.

2. When a condition specified as “congenital” is reported “due to” another condition not specified as congenital, code both conditions as congenital.

Male, 2 months

I (a)	Peritonitis – birth	P781
(b)	Intestinal obstruction	Q419

Code the condition on I(b) as congenital.

3. Code hydrocephalus (G91.0, 1, 2, 8, 9) (any age) to Q039 (congenital hydrocephalus) when it is reported with another cerebral or other central nervous system condition (Q00-Q07, Q280-Q283) which is classified as congenital.

Male, 3 months

I (a)	Cerebral anoxia	G931
(b)	Hydrocephalus & hypoplasia	Q039 Q061
(c)	of spinal cord	

Code hydrocephalus NOS to Q039 since the hypoplasia of spinal cord is classified as congenital.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part D

### Congenital Conditions

---

Male, 3 months	
I (a) Cerebral anoxia	G931
(b) Hydrocephalus	Q039
II Meningomyelocele	Q059

Code the hydrocephalus NOS to Q039 since the meningomyelocele is classified as congenital.

## Part E

## Conditions of Early Infancy (P000 - P969)

E. Conditions of early infancy (P000-P969)

1. Assign newborn codes for conditions classifiable to A40-A41, I48-I50, J12-J189, J849, J984, J9840, J988, and K65.- whether or not indexed as newborn. Refer to Volume I for specific code assignment.

Female, 20 days

- |                                |      |
|--------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Ventricular fibrillation | P291 |
| (b) Staphylococcal pneumonia   | P232 |

Condition on I(a) must be coded to a newborn code even though the Index does not provide a newborn code. Refer to Volume 1, Exclusion note under three the character category for adult code, I49. Code neonatal cardiac dysrhythmias to P291. Condition on I(b) is also coded to the newborn code. Refer to Volume 1, Chapter XVI to determine correct code assignment.

2. When reported on certificate of infant, code the following entries as indicated:

Birth weight of:	2 pounds (999 gms) or under .....	P070
	Over 2 pounds (1000 gms) but not more than	
	5 ½ pounds (2499 gms).....	P071
	10 pounds (4500 gms) or more .....	P080

Gestation of:	Less than 28 weeks .....	P072
	28 weeks but less than 37 weeks.....	P073
	42 or more completed weeks .....	P082

Premature labor or delivery NOS .....	P073
---------------------------------------	------

Female, 3 hours

- |                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Respiratory distress syndrome | P220 |
| (b) Prematurity                     | P073 |
| II 26 weeks gestation               | P072 |

Code gestation, less than 28 weeks to P072.

Male, 8 hours

- |                           |           |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Respiratory failure | P285      |
| (b) Prematurity, 23 weeks | P073 P072 |

Code I(b) as two separate conditions. Code prematurity as indexed P073 and code P072 for “23 weeks.” The 23 weeks is an implied length of gestation.

**SECTION IV**

**Classification of Certain ICD Categories**

**Part E**

**Conditions of Early Infancy (P000 - P969)**

---

3. When a multiple birth or low birth weight is reported on an infant's death certificate outside of Part I or Part II, code this entity as the last entry in Part II.

Male, 29 minutes - Twin A  
I (a) Immature P073  
(b) Weight 1,500 grams - twin P071 P015  
II Atelectasis P281 P015

Code "twin" as the last entry in Part II.

Male, 5 minutes  
4 lbs. I (a) Immaturity of lung P280  
(b)  
(c)  
II P071

Code P071 for "4 lbs." as last entry in Part II.

4. When "termination of pregnancy" or "abortion" (legal) other than criminal is the only reported cause of an infant death, code P964. Do not code P964 if any other codable entry is reported.

Female, 3 minutes  
I (a) Legal abortion P964

Since "legal abortion" is the only entry on the certificate, code P964, as indexed.

5. When a condition classifiable to P703-P720, P722-P749 is the only cause reported on a newborn's death, code P969. If reported with other perinatal conditions, code as indexed.

Male, 7days  
(a) Hypomagnesemia P969  
(b)  
(c)

Code the hypomagnesemia to P969, even though it is indexed to P712 since it is the only cause of death reported.

Female, 2 weeks  
(a) Hypoglycemia P704  
(b) Maternal diabetes P701

Code a) as indexed since reported with another perinatal condition.

F. Sequela

ICD-10 provides sequela codes for the following conditions:

B900-B909	Sequela of tuberculosis
B91	Sequela of acute poliomyelitis
B92	Sequela of leprosy
B940-B949	Sequela of other and unspecified infectious and parasitic diseases
E640-E649	Sequela of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies
E68	Sequela of hyperalimentation
G09	Sequela of inflammatory diseases of central nervous system
I690-I698	Sequela of cerebrovascular disease
O97	Death from sequela of direct obstetric causes
T900-T983*	Sequela of injuries, of poisoning, and of other consequences of external causes
Y850-Y859*	Sequela of transport accidents`
Y86*	Sequela of other accidents
Y870-Y872*	Sequela of intentional self-harm, assault and events of undetermined intent
Y880-Y883*	Sequela with surgical and medical care as external cause
Y890-Y899*	Sequela of other external causes

\* See **Section V, Part S** for instructions for coding sequela of injuries and external causes.

**NOTE:** When conditions in categories A00-B19, B25-B49, B58-B64, B99 are mentioned on the record with HIV (B20-B24, R75), do not consider the infectious or parasitic condition as a sequela.

When there is evidence death resulted from residual effects rather than the active phase of conditions for which the Classification provides a sequela code, code the appropriate sequela category. Code specified residual effects separately. Apply the following instructions to the sequela categories.

1. B900-B909 Sequela of tuberculosis

Use these subcategories for the classification of tuberculosis (conditions in A162-A199) if:

a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the tuberculosis is reported.

I (a) Pulmonary fibrosis	J841
(b) Sequela of pulmonary tuberculosis	B909

Code sequela of pulmonary tuberculosis (B909) since “sequela of” is stated.

b. The tuberculosis is stated to be ancient, arrested, cured, healed, history of, inactive, old, quiescent, or remote, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified, unless there is evidence of active tuberculosis.

I (a) Arrested pulmonary tuberculosis	B909
---------------------------------------	------

Code arrested pulmonary tuberculosis, B909, since there is no evidence of active tuberculosis.

c. When there is evidence of active tuberculosis of a site with inactive (ancient, arrested, cured, healed, history of, old, quiescent, remote) tuberculosis of a **different** site, code both.

d. When there is evidence of active and inactive (ancient, arrested, cured, healed, history of, old, quiescent, remote) tuberculosis of the **same** site, code active tuberculosis of the site only.

**NOTE:** Do not use duration to code sequela of tuberculosis.

I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
(b) Pneumonia	J189
(c) Pulmonary tuberculosis 2 years	A162

Code pulmonary tuberculosis as active. Do not use duration of the tuberculosis to indicate sequela.

2. B91 Sequela of acute poliomyelitis

Use this category for the classification of poliomyelitis (conditions in A800-A809) if:

a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of acute poliomyelitis is reported.

I (a) Sequela of acute poliomyelitis                      B91

Code sequela of acute poliomyelitis as indexed.

b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the acute poliomyelitis is reported.

I (a) Paralysis - 1 year                                      G839

(b) Acute poliomyelitis                                      B91

Code sequela of acute poliomyelitis, since the paralysis has a duration of 1 year.

c. The poliomyelitis is stated to be history of, old, or the interval between onset of the poliomyelitis and death is indicated to be one year or more whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I (a) Old polio    B91

Code old polio.

d. The poliomyelitis is not stated to be acute or active and the interval between the onset of the poliomyelitis and death is not reported.

I (a) Poliomyelitis    B91

(b)

(c)

I (a) ASHD    I251

(b)

(c)

II Poliomyelitis    B91

## Part F

## Sequela

I	(a)	Paralysis	G839
	(b)	Polio	B91
	(c)		

I	(a)	Poliomyelitis with	B91 G839
	(b)	paralysis	
	(c)		

3. B92 Sequela of leprosy

Use this category for the classification of leprosy (conditions in A30) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the leprosy is reported.
- b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to leprosy is reported.

4. B940 Sequela of trachoma

Use this subcategory for the classification of trachoma (conditions in A710-A719) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the trachoma is reported.

I	(a)	Late effects of trachoma	B940
---	-----	--------------------------	------

- b. The trachoma is stated to be healed or inactive, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I	(a)	Healed trachoma	B940
---	-----	-----------------	------

- c. A chronic condition such as blindness, cicatricial entropion or conjunctival scar that was due to the trachoma is reported unless there is evidence of active infection.

I	(a)	Conjunctival scar	H112
	(b)	Trachoma	B940

5. B941 Sequela of viral encephalitis

Use this subcategory for the classification of viral encephalitis (conditions in A830-A839, A840-A849, A850-A858, A86) if:

a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the viral encephalitis is reported.

I (a) Late effects of viral encephalitis                      B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis as indexed.

b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the viral encephalitis is reported.

I (a) Chronic brain syndrome                                      F069

(b) Viral encephalitis    B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis, since a resultant chronic condition is reported.

c. The viral encephalitis is stated to be ancient, history of, old, remote, or the interval between onset of the viral encephalitis and death is indicated to be one year or more whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I (a) St. Louis encephalitis                      1 yr                      B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis, since a duration of 1 year is reported.

I (a) Old viral encephalitis    B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis, since it is stated "old."

d. Brain damage, cerebral fungus, CNS damage, epilepsy, hydrocephalus, mental retardation, paralysis (G810-G839) is reported due to the viral encephalitis.

I (a) Paralysis    G839

(b) Viral encephalitis    B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis since paralysis is reported due to the viral encephalitis.

6. B942 Sequela of viral hepatitis

Use this subcategory for the classification of viral hepatitis (conditions in B150-B199) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the viral hepatitis is reported.
- b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to viral hepatitis is reported.

7. B948 Sequela of other specified infectious and parasitic diseases  
B949 Sequela of unspecified infectious and parasitic diseases

Use B948 for the classification of other and unspecified infectious and parasitic diseases (conditions in A000-A09, A200-A70, A740-A799, A810-A829, A870-B09, B250-B89) and

Use B949 for the classification of only the terms “infectious disease NOS” and “parasitic disease NOS” if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the infectious or parasitic disease is reported.
- b. The infectious or parasitic disease is stated to be ancient, arrested, cured, healed, history of, inactive, old, quiescent, or remote, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified, unless there is evidence of activity of the disease.
- c. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the infectious or parasitic disease is reported.

I	(a) Reye’s syndrome	1yr	G937
	(b) Chickenpox		B948

I	(a) Chronic brain syndrome		F069
	(b) Meningococcal encephalitis		B948

- d. There is indication the interval between onset of the infectious or parasitic disease and death was one year or more, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

8. E640-E649 Sequela of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies

Use Sequela Code	For Categories
E640	E40-E46
E641	E500-E509
E642	E54
E643	E550-E559
E648	E51-E53 E56-E60 E610-E638
E649	E639

Use these subcategories for the classification of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies (conditions in E40-E639) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies (E40-E639) is reported.

I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
	(b) Sequela of malnutrition	E640

- b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more is qualified as rachitic or that was due to rickets (E55.-) is reported.

I	(a) Scoliosis	3 years	M419
	(b) Rickets		E643

9. E68 Sequela of hyperalimentation

Use this category for the classification of hyperalimentation (conditions in E67 and hyperalimentation NOS in R632) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the hyperalimentation is reported.
- b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to hyperalimentation is reported.

10. G09 Sequela of inflammatory diseases of central nervous system

Use this category for the classification of intracranial abscess or pyogenic infection (conditions in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the condition in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08 is reported.
- b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the condition in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08 is reported.
- c. The condition in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08 is stated to be ancient, history of, old, remote, or the interval between onset of this condition and death is indicated to be one year or more, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.
- d. Brain damage, cerebral fungus, CNS damage, epilepsy, hydrocephalus, mental retardation, paralysis (G810-G839) is reported due to a condition in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08.

- |   |                   |      |
|---|-------------------|------|
| I | (a) Hydrocephalus | G919 |
|   | (b) Meningitis    | G09  |

11. I690-I698 Sequela of cerebrovascular disease

Use this category for the classification of cerebrovascular disease (conditions in I600-I64, I670-I679) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of a cerebrovascular disease is reported.

I (a) Sequela of cerebral infarction I693

Code sequela of cerebral infarction as indexed.

- b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to one of these cerebrovascular diseases is reported.

I (a) Hemiplegia 1 year G819  
(b) Intracranial hemorrhage I692

Code sequela of other nontraumatic intracranial hemorrhage since the residual effect (hemiplegia) has a duration of one year.

- c. The condition in I600-I64 and I670-I679 is stated to be ancient, chronic, history of, old, remote, or the interval between onset of this condition and death is indicated to be one year or more, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I (a) Brain damage G939  
(b) Remote cerebral thrombosis I693

Code sequela of cerebral thrombosis since the cerebral thrombosis is reported as remote.

I (a) Old intracerebral hemorrhage I691

Code sequela of intracerebral hemorrhage since the intracerebral hemorrhage is stated as old.

## Part F

## Sequela

---

I (a) Cerebral arteriosclerosis      6 yr      I698

Code sequela of other and unspecified cerebrovascular disease since the cerebral arteriosclerosis has a duration of one year or more.

I (a) History of CVA      I694

Code sequela of CVA since “history of” CVA is reported.

- d. The condition in I600-I64, and I670-I679 is reported with paralysis (any) stated to be ancient, chronic, history of, old, remote, or the interval between onset of this condition and death is indicated to be one year or more whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I (a) CVA with old hemiplegia      I694    G819

Code sequela of CVA since it is reported with hemiplegia stated as old.

12. O97 Sequela of direct obstetric cause

Use this category for the classification of a direct obstetric cause (conditions in O00-O927) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the direct obstetric cause is reported.
- b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the direct obstetric cause is reported.

## Part G

## Ill-Defined and Unknown Causes

G. Ill-defined and unknown causes1. Sudden infant death syndrome (R95)**Includes:**

Cot death

Crib death

SDII, SID, SIDS, SUD, SUDI, SUID

Sudden (unexpected) (unattended) (unexplained)

- death (cause unknown) (in infancy) (syndrome)
- infant death (syndrome)

Causing death at  
ages under  
1 year

**Excludes:**

The listed conditions causing death at ages one year or over (R960)

Female, 6 months

I (a) Sudden death R95

Male, 3 weeks

I (a) Sudden death, cause unknown R95  
(b) R97

Female, 3 months

I (a) SIDS, pneumonia R95 J189

2. Other sudden death and other unspecified cause (R960-R961, R98-R99)

Code R960-R961, R98-R99 only when:

a. A term(s) classifiable to one of these codes is the only entry (or entries) on the death certificate.

b. The only other entry on the death certificate is classifiable to R97 (cause unknown).

Female, 2 years

I (a) Sudden death R960  
(b) Crib death R960

## Part G

## III-Defined and Unknown Causes

- c. When more than one term classifiable to two or more of these categories is reported, code only one in this priority: R960, R961, R98, R99.

(1) Instantaneous death (R960)**Includes:**

- Cot death
- Crib death
- SDII, SID, SIDS, SUD, SUDI, SUID
- Sudden (unexpected) (unattended) (unexplained)
  - death (cause unknown) (in infancy) syndrome
  - infant death (syndrome)

Causing death at  
age 1 year  
or over

**Excludes:**

The listed conditions causing death at ages under one year (R95).

Male, 3 years

- |                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Sudden death, cause unknown | R960 |
| (b)                               | R97  |

Female, 2 years

- |                       |      |
|-----------------------|------|
| I (a) SIDS, pneumonia | J189 |
|-----------------------|------|

(2) Death occurring in less than 24 hours from onset of symptoms, not otherwise explained (R961)

- |                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Died—no sign of disease | R961 |
|-------------------------------|------|

(3) Unattended death (R98)

- |                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| I (a) Found dead          | R98 |
| (b) Investigation pending |     |

- |                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| I (a) Found dead at foot of steps | R98 |
| (b) Natural causes                |     |

(4) Ill-defined and unspecified cause of mortality (R99)**Includes:**

Bone(s) found  
 Dead on arrival (DOA)  
 Diagnosis deferred  
 Died without doctor in attendance  
 Inquest pending  
 Natural cause(s)  
 No doctor  
 Pending examination (any type)  
     (pathological) (toxicological)  
 Pending investigation (police)  
 Skeleton  
 Undiagnosed disease

**Excludes:**

Unknown cause (R97)

I	(a) DOA	R99
	(b) Cause unknown	R97
I	(a) No doctor	R99
	(b) Pending investigation	R99
I	(a) Cause unknown	R97
	(b) Pending pathological examination	R99

## Part G

## III-Defined and Unknown Causes

3. Unknown cause (R97)**Includes:**

Cause not found	No specific known causes
Cause unknown	Nonspecific causes
Cause undetermined	Not known
Could not be determined	Obscure etiology
Etiology never determined	Undetermined
Etiology not defined	Uncertain
Etiology unexplained	Unclear
Etiology unknown	Unexplained cause
Etiology undetermined	Unknown
Final event undetermined	? Cause
Immediate cause not determined	? Etiology
Immediate cause unknown	
No specific etiology identified	

Use this category for the classification of the listed terms except when the term in R97 is reported on the same line with and preceding a condition qualified as “possible,” “probably,” etc. In such cases, no code should be entered for the term in R97.

I (a) G. I. hemorrhage	K922
(b) Cause unknown	R97
(c) Carcinomatosis	C80
I (a) Unknown cause	R97
I (a) Intestinal obstruction	K566
(b) Unknown, possibly cancer	C80
I (a) Amyloidosis	E859
(b) Chronic ulcerative colitis	K519
(c)	
II Cirrhosis of liver, cause unknown	K746 R97

## Part G

## III-Defined and Unknown Causes

If the term in R97 is reported in Part I on the same line with and following the condition to which it applies, enter the code for unknown cause on the next due to line whether or not “cause unknown” is in parentheses beside the condition in Volume 3. Code the conditions on each of the remaining lines in Part I, if there are any, as though they had been reported on the succeeding line(s).

Age 3 months		
I	(a) SIDS, cause unknown	R95
	(b)	R97
I	(a) Natural causes, cause unknown	R99
	(b)	R97
I	(a) Unknown cause	R97
	(b) Found dead	R98
I	(a) Unknown	R97
	(b) Known to had ASHD	I251 J42
	(c) and chronic bronchitis	
I	(a) Gastric ulcer, cause unknown	K259
	(b) Rheumatoid arthritis	R97
	(c)	M069

In ICD-10, the Nature of Injury Chapter (XIX) is part of the main Classification but certain effects of external causes are classified in Chapters I-XVIII. The external cause codes (Chapter XX) are intended for use, where relevant, to identify the external cause of conditions classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII, as well as to Chapter XIX. While not all external causes will have a corresponding code in Chapter XIX, an external cause code is required when a code from Chapter XIX is applicable.

A. External cause code (E-Code) concept

An external cause of injury may be classified to Accidents (V01-X59), Intentional self harm (X60-X84), Assault (X85-Y09), Event of undetermined intent (Y10-Y34), Legal intervention and operations of war (Y35-Y36), Complications of medical and surgical care (Y40-Y84), and Sequela of external causes (Y85-Y89). When unspecified, assume all external cause one-term entities to be accidental unless the External Causes of Injury Index provides otherwise.

The objective in assigning the external cause codes is to combine into the entity being coded any related entries on the record that will permit the assignment of the most specific external cause codes in accordance with the intent of the certifier. After the determination of the most specific external cause code is made, enter this code where it is first encountered on the record. Do not repeat the same external cause code when it is reported on other lines. When more than one external cause is reported, code each external cause code where it is first encountered on the certificate.

The death certificate provides a specific place for information concerning the external cause of injury that is usually entered on the lines below the line labeled "Part II." However, a description of the external cause is reported frequently in Part I and may be repeated in the space provided for this information.

When such statements as: "jumped or fell," "don't know," "accident or suicide," "accident or homicide," "undetermined," or "open verdict" are reported, code the external cause as "undetermined." The "undetermined" categories include self-inflicted injuries, except poisoning, when not specified whether accidental or with intent to harm.

1. Use of Index

ICD-10 provides separate indexing in Volume 3, Section II for the external causes of injury, with frequent references to Volume 1. The External Causes of Injury Index provides a double axis of indexing — descriptions of the circumstances under which the accident or violence occurred and the agent involved in the occurrence. Usually, the “lead terms” in the External Causes of Injury Index describe the circumstances of the injury with a secondary (indented) entry naming the agent involved.

Fall from building                      W13

Locate the E-code for “fall”:

Fall, falling  
- from, off  
- - building W13.-

2. Use of Tabular List

After locating the external cause code in the Index, always refer to Volume 1 since certain external cause codes for transport accidents require a fourth character not provided for in the Index. When ICD-10 provides a fourth character subcategory for an external cause code, always code the fourth character.

Fell from boat                              V929

Locate the E-code for “fall”:

Fall  
- from  
- - boat, ship, watercraft NEC (with drowning or submersion) V92.-

In Volume 1, the fourth character describes the type of boat. Code the fourth character “9,” unspecified watercraft.



**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
External Cause Code Concept**

---

**Part A**

- (5) Enter a code for an entry in a check box for “natural cause” only if this is the only codable entry on the certificate or the only other codable entry is “unknown cause” (R97).

b. As a separate variable

Enter an alpha character manner of death code (N, A, S, H, P, or C) in the appropriate data position for any entry in the manner of death check box. **Use only the information reported in the manner of death box to assign the code.**

Code the manner of death as:

Natural .....	N
Accident.....	A
Suicide .....	S
Homicide .....	H
Pending Investigation .....	P
Could not be determined .....	C
Blank.....	Blank

5. Nature of injury and external cause code lists

Since certain entities state or imply cause (E-code) and effect (N-code), ICD-10 provides both N-codes and E-codes for many terms. Determination must be made whether to code nature of injury code only, external cause code only, or both nature of injury and external cause codes for such terms. Use the following lists as **guides** in classifying these terms. When ICD-10 provides a nature of injury code for an entity that does **not** appear on either list, use the nature of injury code only.

The E-code is only coded the first time external information is mentioned. A term requiring a N-code is coded each time it is reported.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning External Cause Code Concept

---

### Part A

#### Nature of injury code only (N-Code)

Allergy	Intoxication (when due to a drug)
Anaphylactic reaction	Lacerations
Anaphylactic shock	Lack of care
Anaphylactic, anaphylaxis	Mucus plug
Anoxia	Multiple injuries
Bezoar	Polypharmacy (when it means drug poisoning)
Burns	Scald
Cremation	Severed
Crushed	Smoke
Decapitation	Starvation
Deceleration injury	Trauma NOS (any site)
Drug NOS or named drug (when it means drug poisoning)	Traumatic
Drug synergism	Traumatic death
Exhaustion	Traumatic injury (any site)
Fracture	Traumatism
Inattention at birth	Wound (penetrating)
Incineration	
Injury NOS (any site)	

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning External Cause Code Concept

---

### Part A

#### External cause code only (E-code)

Abandonment	Explosion	Hot weather
Accident, accidental	Explosive blasts to site(s)	Impact
Arson	Fall	Inhalation
Assault	Fight	Physical violence
Beaten	Fire	Projectile
Blow to any site	Flood	Reaction of drug with a reported complication
Blunt force NOS	Foreign body	Striking any site
Blunt impact NOS	Heat	Suicide, suicidal
Conflagration	Hitting any site	
Desertion	Homicide, homicidal	
Excessive heat	Hot environment	

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning External Cause Code Concept

### Part A

Entities Requiring nature of injury and external cause codes on the same line (N\E Codes)

Airway obstruction by foreign body	Immersion
Anastomotic leak	Impact injury (any site)
*Asphyxia	Impact to a site (any)
*Aspiration	Incised (wound)
Battered child (syndrome)	Ingestion of foreign body
Bite	Inhalation injury (any)
Blunt blow to a site	*Inhalation of foreign body
Blunt force injury (any site)	Lightning (struck by)
Blunt force to a site (any)	Mangled
Blunt impact to a site (any)	Mechanical trauma
Blunt injury (any site)	Overdose (of drug)
Blunt trauma (any site)	Overheated
Bullet (to site)	Overexertion
Bullet wound	Poisoning (by substance)
Child abuse	Puncture, punctured (any site)
Child neglect	Puncture wound
Choking on foreign body	Radiation burns
Crushed by specified object	Rape
Cut	Razor cut
Drowning	Shooting, shot (to site)
Electrocution	Shotgun blast (to site)
Electrical burns	Slash, slashed (any site)
Electrical shock	Smothered
Exposure (to element) (cold, heat)	Snake bite
Flame burn	Stab
Foreign body in any site	Sting
Freezing, froze, frostbite	Strangulation
Got too hot	Submersion
Gunshot (to site)	Suffocation
Gunshot wound	Sunstroke
Hanging (by neck)	Suspension, suspended
Heat exhaustion	Swallowed object
Heat stress	Toxicity (of substance)
Heat stroke	Vehicular trauma
Hypothermia	Weapon wound

(\* This does not apply when certain localized effects result from asphyxia, aspiration, or inhalation. Refer to Section V, Part O.)

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Placement of N-Code and E-Code

Part B

B. Placement of nature of injury and external cause codes

When a nature of injury code and an external cause code are required for an entity, enter the nature of injury code followed by the external cause code on the same line.

Place I (a) Gunshot wound of chest S219 &W34
9 (b)
(c)
MOD II
A Accident

Since "gunshot wound" requires a nature of injury and an E-code, enter on I(a) the nature of injury code for wound of chest followed by the most specific E-code for gunshot, accidental. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified). Code manner of death as A (accident).

When entries requiring nature of injury codes and external cause codes are reported on the same line in Part I, code the first nature of injury code followed by the most specific external cause code; then code any remaining conditions for the line in the order indicated by the certifier.

Place I (a) Laceration of throat S118
9 (b) Dog bite of shoulder, S410 &W54 T111 S119
(c) arm and neck

Code the nature of injury code only for I(a). On I(b), code the nature of injury code for "bite of shoulder" followed by the E-code for dog bite followed by the remaining nature of injury codes for "bite arm and neck." Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

Place I (a) Fracture skull S029
9 (b) Fell from window, crushed S280 &W13 S381
(c) chest and abdomen

I(a) requires a nature of injury code only. I(b) requires both nature of injury and E-code since the external cause and injuries are reported on this line. Code first nature of injury code followed by the external cause code, followed by the remaining nature of injury codes. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

Place I (a) Renal failure N19
0 (b) Injury kidney, liver and S370 &W11 S361 S360
(c) spleen. Fell from ladder at home

Code I(b) injury kidney followed by external cause code for the fall, followed by the remaining injuries. Code place of occurrence as 0 (home).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Placement of N-Code and E-Code**

**Part B**

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Cerebral laceration & contusion (b) Blow to right temporal area	S062 &X59
-------------------	--	--------------

Code I(a) to the nature of injury code only, and I(b) to the external cause code only. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

In Part II, code each entry in the same order as entered on the certificate. For entities requiring both nature of injury and external cause codes, enter the nature of injury code followed by the external cause code. Enter the information recorded in the special spaces that have been provided on the medical certification form for recording information about external causes of injury following any codes that are applicable to Part II.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Crushed chest (b) Broken rib (c)	S280 S223
II	Fracture hip and arm	S720 T10 &W24
43	Run over by a forklift	

In Part II, code each entry in the order entered on the certificate. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Subdural hematoma II Blunt impact injury to head	S065 S099 &Y00
<u>MOD</u> H	Homicide	
43	Struck on head with a blunt object by another person	

Since the entry in Part II requires both nature of injury and external cause codes, enter the nature of injury code followed by the most specific external cause code. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Head wound II	S019 &W34 S062 S019
<u>MOD</u> A	Accident	
43	Cerebral laceration, GSW of head	

Code external cause code first in Part II since manner of death box requires an external cause code. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

## Part C

C. Use of ampersand

Use an ampersand to identify the following:

1. The most specific external cause code causing injuries or poisoning.
2. Certain localized effects of poisonous substances (X45-X49) or aspiration (W78, W79, W80) when classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII.
3. Ampersand the E-code for aspiration (W78-W80) anytime it is reported.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Aspiration	T179	&W78
	0		(b) Vomitus		
	II		Fx Hip	S720	&W19
			Fall at home		

Ampersand both the E-code for aspiration and the E-code for fall at home.

**Exceptions to 3:**

- a. When reported **due to** nature of injury codes or other external causes.
- b. When a nature of injury code other than T179 is reported as the **first** condition on the lowest used line in Part I.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Aspiration of vomitus	T179	W78
	0		(b) Fx hip	S720	
	II		Fall at home		&W19

Do not ampersand the E-code for aspiration since both Exception 3(a) and 3(b) apply.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Use of Ampersand**

**Part C**

---

In determining the most specific external cause code, consider all of the information reported on the record. If two or more external causes are reported and the nature of the injuries and/or the order in which the conditions are reported indicates that one of the external causes led to the condition that terminated in death, precede the code for this external cause by an ampersand. If no determination can be made, precede the code for the first mentioned external cause with an ampersand.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Aspiration of vomitus	T179	W78
9		(b) Internal chest injury	S279	
		(c) Fall down stairs	&W10	

The order in which the conditions are reported indicates that the fall down stairs led to aspiration; therefore, the ampersand precedes the code for this external cause.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Gunshot wound of head	S019	&X95	
9		(b) Stab wound of chest	S219	X99	
<u>MOD</u>	II	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>			Homicide
Homicide					
H					

The order in which the external causes are reported does not indicate which event occurred first; therefore, precede the code for the gunshot wound with an ampersand since it is the first external cause reported.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Certifications with Mention of Nature of Injury and  
without Mention of External Cause**

**Part D**

**D. Certifications with mention of nature of injury and without mention of external cause**

All certifications that have an entry classifiable to Chapter XIX must have an external cause code. When only one type of injury is reported without indication of the external cause and the External Cause Index provides a code for this type of injury, code accordingly. If the External Cause Index does not provide a code for the type of injury, code to Accident, unspecified (X59). When no external cause is reported and the external cause code must be assumed, code the external cause code as the last entry in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Crushed chest	S280
9	II	&X59

Code Crushed (accidentally), X59 as indexed.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Fracture of hip and arm	S720 T10
9	II	&X59

Code Fracture (circumstances unknown or unspecified), X59 as indexed.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Penetrating wound of abdomen	S318 S219
9	(b) and chest	
	II	&X59

Code Wound (accidental) NEC, X59 as indexed.

If different types of injuries are reported without indication of the external cause, use the injury reported in the lowest due to position to assign the appropriate external cause code for this injury. If more than one injury is reported on the lowest line, assign the appropriate external cause code for the first mentioned injury.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Brain injury	S069
9	(b) Fracture of skull	S029
	II	&X59

Code Fracture (circumstances unknown or unspecified), X59.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Fracture of hip	S720
9	(b) Crushing hip injury	S770
	II	&X59

Code Crushed (accidentally), X59.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Certifications with Mention of Nature of Injury and  
without Mention of External Cause**

**Part D**

---

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Cerebral concussion and	S060	S062
9		(b) laceration of brain		
	II		&X59	

Concussion is not indexed in External Cause Index. Code to Accident, unspecified, X59.

These generalizations do not apply if the place of occurrence of the injury was highway, street, road, or alley. Refer to instructions for transport accidents in Section V, Part J.

Implied site of injury

Relate most injuries of an unspecified site to a condition of a specified site, whether or not qualified as generalized, multiple, or stated plural, following general instructions for relating disease conditions.

**Exceptions:**

Do not relate

- Injury(ies) (generalized) (internal) (multiple)
- Trauma(s) (generalized) (internal) (multiple)
- Wound(s) (generalized) (internal) (multiple)

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Crushed skull with multiple fractures	S071	S029
9	II		&X59	

Code crushed skull followed by multiple skull fractures relating the injury of unspecified site to the site of the injury that is reported on the same line. Since there is no external cause reported, code Crushed (accidentally) as indexed in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Fractured neck and contusions	S129	S109
9	II		&X59	

Code fractured neck followed by neck contusion relating the injury of unspecified site to the site of the injury that is reported on the same line. Since there is no external cause reported, code Fracture (circumstances unknown or unspecified) as indexed in Part II.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Certifications with Mention of Nature of Injury and  
without Mention of External Cause**

**Part D**

---

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Fracture of hip	S720
9		(b) Crushing injury	S770
	II		&X59

Code crushing injury hip since there is only one site reported either on the line above or below the fracture. Since there is no external cause reported, code Crushed (accidentally) as indexed in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Fracture of skull with generalized trauma	S029	T07
9	II		&X59	

Code the generalized trauma as indexed. Do not relate to the site of the injury reported on the same line with it. Since there is no external cause reported, code Fracture (circumstances unknown or unspecified) as indexed in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Skull fracture	S029
9		(b) Wound	T141
	II		&X59

Code I(b) to Wound as indexed. Do not relate to the site of the fracture reported on the upper line. Since there is no external cause reported, code Wound (accidental) NEC, X59 as indexed in Part II.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Conditions Qualified as Traumatic

Part E

E. Conditions qualified as traumatic

1. Some conditions are indexed directly to a nontraumatic category but the Classification also provides a traumatic code. Consider these conditions to be traumatic and code as traumatic:

a. When they are qualified as “traumatic”

b. Or they are reported on the certificate with:

- Injury NOS
- Trauma NOS
- Any specified injury (injuries)
- The **Manner of Death** is Accident, Homicide, Suicide, Pending Investigation or Undetermined.
- An external cause

**Exception:** Do not apply this instruction if the condition is reported due to a nontraumatic condition or poisoning is reported.

<u>Place</u> 6	I (a) Pneumothorax (b) Fracture rib	S270 S223
	II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Place of injury- Factory</div>	&X59

Since pneumothorax is reported on the certificate with an injury, code pneumothorax as traumatic.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage (b) (c)	S062
<u>MOD</u> A	II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Accident</div>	&X59

Consider cerebral hemorrhage to be traumatic since Accident is reported in the Manner of Death box.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

**Part E**

	I	(a) Cardiorespiratory failure	R092
		(b) Intracerebral hemorrhage	I619
		(c) Meningioma	D329
<u>MOD</u>	II		
A		Accident	

Since intracerebral hemorrhage is reported due to a disease condition, code as nontraumatic. Do not enter an E-code for Accident reported in the check box since no condition is coded to Chapter XIX.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Subarachnoid hemorrhage	S066
9		(b) Fall	&W19
<u>MOD</u>	II		
N		Natural	

Code subarachnoid hemorrhage as traumatic since it is reported on the certificate with an external cause, disregarding Natural in the Manner of Death box.

**Exceptions:**

- a. Code emphysema, encephalitis, and meningitis to the nature of injury code only when they are stated to be “traumatic” or are reported **due to** or **on the same line with** an injury or external cause.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Emphysema	T797
9		(b) Injury chest	S299
		(c) Fall	&W19

Code I(a) emphysema, traumatic since the condition is reported due to an injury.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Internal injury	T148
9		(b) Fall from ladder	&W11
	II	Meningitis	G039

Do not code the meningitis as traumatic since it is not reported due to or on the same line with an injury or external cause. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

**Part E**

- b. Code the following terms to the traumatic category **only** when stated to be “traumatic:”

pneumonia (classifiable to J120-J168, J180-J189, J690, J698)  
epilepsy (G400-G409)  
gastrointestinal hemorrhage (any K922)

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Pneumonia	J189
9		(b) Fracture hip	S720
	II	Fall	&W19

Code I(a) pneumonia as indexed since it is not reported as traumatic.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Traumatic epilepsy	T905
9		(b) Head injury	T909
		(c) Fall from ladder	&Y86

Code epilepsy to the nature of injury code since it is stated traumatic.

- c. When the traumatic form of a condition is classified to Chapters I-XVIII, code as traumatic **only** when stated to be “traumatic”

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
9		(b) Organic brain syndrome	F069
		(c) Brain injury	S069
		(d) Fall	&W19

Code organic brain syndrome as indexed since it is not stated “traumatic.”

2. When a condition of a specified site is stated to be traumatic but there is no provision in the Classification for coding the condition as traumatic, code to injury unqualified of the site.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Traumatic cerebral thrombosis	S069
9		(b) Fall	&W19

Code Injury, cerebral.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

---

**Part E**

3. When a condition that does not indicate a specified site is stated to be traumatic, but there is no provision in the Classification for coding the condition as traumatic, code trauma unspecified and the condition separately.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Traumatic coma	T149	R402
9		(b) Fall	&W19	

Code trauma unspecified and coma separately.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

**Part E**

4. Traumatic hemorrhage (T148, T149)

Internal hemorrhage NOS	1	<b>Due to or on same line with</b> injury (any site)	Code the hemorrhage to T148, internal injury NOS
Hemorrhage NOS	2	<b>Due to</b> injury of a specified site	Relate the hemorrhage to the site of the specified injury
	3	<b>Due to</b> injury NOS or multiple injuries NOS	Code the hemorrhage to T149, injury NOS
	4	<b>Due to</b> injury of multiple specified sites	Relate the hemorrhage to site of the first mentioned specified injury
	5	<b>Due to</b> internal injury NOS or internal injuries NOS	Code the hemorrhage to T148, internal injury NOS
	6	<b>On same line with</b> injury of site	Relate the hemorrhage to the site of the specified injury
	7	<b>On same line with</b> injury of multiple specified sites	Code the hemorrhage to T149, injury NOS
	8	<b>On same line with</b> internal injury NOS or internal injuries NOS	Code the hemorrhage to T148, internal injury NOS
	9	<b>Due to and on same line with</b> injuries of different specified sites	Relate the hemorrhage to the site of the injury that is entered on the same line with hemorrhage

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

**Part E**

				<u>Instruction Number</u>
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Internal hemorrhage	T148	1
		(b) Crushed thorax	S280	
	II		&X59	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Hemorrhage	S799	2
		(b) Fracture of femur	S729	
	II		&X59	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Hemorrhage	S299	2
		(b) Laceration of chest	S219	
	II		&X59	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Hemorrhage	T149	3
		(b) Multiple injuries	T07	
	II		&X59	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Hemorrhage	S299	4
		(b) Injury of chest, lung and (c) fractured rib	S299 S273 S223	
	II		&X59	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Contusion chest with	S202 S299	6
		(b) hemorrhage		
	II		&X59	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Laceration of liver, lung,	S361 S273 S360 T149	7
		(b) & spleen with hemorrhage		
	II	Fracture rt. femur	S729 &X59	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Cerebral contusion	S062	9
		(b) with hemorrhage		
	II	(c) Injury of chest, lung, back	S299 S273 S399 &X59	

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Assumption of Nature of Injury Code**

**Part F**

F. Assumption of nature of injury code

1. When a condition classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII, excluding J680-J709, is reported due to an external cause not considered to be medical or surgical care, code both a nature of injury code and an external cause code. Assume the nature of injury to be Injury NOS, T149.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Respiratory failure	J969
9		(b) Fire	T149 &X09

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Heart failure	I509
9		(b) Machine overturned	T149 &W31

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Subarachnoid hemorrhage	I609
9		(b) Stroke	I64
		(c) Fall	T149 &W19

Do not code the hemorrhage on I(a) as traumatic since it is reported due to a nontraumatic condition.

2. When an external cause does not result in a condition classifiable to Chapters I – XVIII, do not assume a nature of injury code.

I	(a) Struck by falling tree	W20
II	Respiratory failure	J969

**Exceptions:**

1. When conditions classified to categories A000-R99 are reported due to “second hand smoke,” code the “second hand smoke” to X49.

I	(a) Pulmonary emphysema	J439
	(b) Second hand smoke	X49

I	(a) Lung cancer	C349
	(b) Second hand smoke	X49

I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
	(b) Second hand smoke	X49

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Assumption of Nature of Injury Code**

---

**Part F**

2. Anthrax is reported with accident, suicide, homicide or undetermined

When anthrax (A220-A229) is reported with accident, suicide or homicide anywhere on the record (including in the check box) or undetermined in the check box only, code the anthrax as indexed and code the external cause code as:

- Accident specified (X58)
- Suicide specified (X83)
- Homicide specified (Y08)
- Undetermined specified (Y33)

Anthrax designated as an act of terrorism is classified to U016.

<u>MOD</u>	I	(a) Inhalation anthrax	A221
H	II		Y08

Homicide
----------

Code I(a) as indexed under Anthrax, inhalation. Code an E-code only in Part II for homicide based upon the check box entry. Also enter a H for Homicide in the Manner of Death item.

I	(a) Anthrax	A229
	(b) Homicide	Y08

Code I(a) as indexed. Code an E-code only on I(b); do not assume an injury code.

**Part G****G. Multiple injuries (T00-T07)**

When injury (of a site) or specified type of injury (of a site) is:

<b>Stated as</b>	<b>Code as indexed under</b>
Bilateral	Injury (or specified type of injury), site, bilateral
Both	Injury (or specified type of injury), site, both
Multiple	Injury (or specified type of injury), site, multiple

Do not consider the plural form of injury or the plural form of a site to indicate multiple. Do not consider “right and left” as bilateral or both.

Examples of injuries:

1. Fracture of both hips T025  
     Fracture  
     - hip  
     - - both T025
  
2. Fracture of hips S720  
     Fracture  
     - hip S720
  
3. Multiple fractures of ribs S224  
     Fracture  
     - rib  
     - - multiple S224
  
4. Fractures of ribs S223  
     Fracture  
     - rib S223
  
5. Multiple wounds of lower limb T013  
     Wound  
     - limb  
     - - lower NEC  
     - - - multiple sites T013

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Multiple Injuries**

**Part G**

Multiple injuries	<b>Followed by</b> specified type(s) of injuries	Code T07 and the specified injuries
Multiple injuries	<b>Followed by</b> specified site(s)	Code multiple injuries by site only
Single site	<b>Reported on same line with</b> multiple types of injuries	Code the specified types of injuries of the reported site

Place I (a) Multiple injuries with T07 S029 S062  
 9 (b) fracture skull and  
 (c) laceration brain  
 II &X59

Place I (a) Multiple injuries - head, S097 S197 S297  
 9 neck, chest  
 II &X59

Place I (a) Fracture, laceration and contusion T12 T131 T130  
 9 (b) of leg  
 (c) Fall from roof &W13

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Burns: Multiple Degrees of Burns/Percentage of  
Body Surface Burned**

**Part H**

H. Burns: multiple degrees of burns/percentage of body surface burned

1. When multiple degrees of burns are reported, with or without mention of sites, code the most severe degree only.

<u>Place</u> 0	I (a) 2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> degree burns (b) of face, chest wall and abdomen (c)	T203 T213
-------------------	--	-----------

<u>MOD</u> A	II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">home</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">house fire</div> </div>	&X00
-----------------	--	------

Code 3<sup>rd</sup> degree burns of each site reported.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) 2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> degree burns (b) (c)	T303
-------------------	--	------

II		&X09
----	--	------

Code 3<sup>rd</sup> degree burns of unspecified body region.

2. When a percentage of burns or a percentage of body (entire, total) burns is reported, code to the percentage.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Burns of 50% of (b) body surface (c)	T315
-------------------	--	------

<u>MOD</u> A	II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">clothing caught on fire</div> </div>	&X06
-----------------	---	------

Code burns involving 50-59% of body surface.

3. When specified degrees of burns are reported with the percentage of body surface involved, code only the percentage of body surface involved.

<u>Place</u> 0	I (a) 30-40%, 2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> degree burns of body (b) (c)	T314
-------------------	--	------

II House fire		&X00
---------------	--	------

Code burns involving 40-49% of body surface.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Burns: Multiple Degrees of Burns/Percentage of  
Body Surface Burned**

**Part H**

---

4. When a percentage of burns of specified sites is reported, code to burn of site(s) involved.

Place I (a) Burns, 76% of face, anterior trunk, and T200 T210 T300  
8 (b) extremities  
(c)

MOD II &X00 T300  
A

Accident	burned in fire in abandoned shack
----------	-----------------------------------

Code unspecified degree burns of each site reported. In Part II, code burned as burn of unspecified body region, unspecified degree.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Specified Types and Sites of Injuries

---

Part I

I. Specified types of injuries

1. When specified **types** of injuries of sites are reported, code to site only. Do not use Index entries of “specified type NEC” or “specified NEC” (usually .8) .

Place I (a) Impact injury, upper arm S499 &X59  
9

Indexed as:

Injury  
- arm NEC T119  
- - **upper S499**  
- - - specified NEC S498

Place I (a) Blunt injury, trunk T099 &X59  
9

Indexed as:

Injury  
- **trunk T099**  
- - specified type NEC T098

2. When specified **sites** of injuries are reported, do not use Index entries of “specified type NEC” or “specified NEC”. Use only if indexed as “specified site NEC” or “specified part NEC.”

Place I (a) Fracture third cervical vertebra S129  
9 (b) Fall &W19

Indexed as:

Fracture  
- vertebra T08  
- - **cervical (teardrop) S129**  
- - - specified NEC S122

Place I (a) GSW right side of neck S118 &W34  
9

Indexed as:

- Wound  
- - neck S119  
- - - **specified part NEC S118**

J. Transportation accidents (V01-V99)

The main axis of classification for land transports (V01-V89) is the victim's mode of transportation. The vehicle, which the injured person is an occupant, is identified in the first two characters since it is seen as the most important for prevention purposes.

Definitions and examples relating to transport accidents are in Volume 1, pages XX-9 - XX-17. Refer to these definitions when any means of transportation (aircraft and spacecraft, watercraft, motor vehicle, railway, other road vehicle) is involved in causing death.

For classification purposes, a motor vehicle not otherwise specified is **NOT** equivalent to a car. Motor vehicle accidents where the type of vehicle is unspecified are classified to V87-V89.

A vehicle not otherwise specified is **NOT** equivalent to a motor vehicle **unless** the accident occurred on the street, highway, etc. Vehicle accidents where the type of vehicle is unspecified are classified to V87-V89.

Additional information about type of transports are given below:

- (1) Car (automobile) includes minivan, jeep, blazer, sport utility vehicle
- (2) Pick-up truck or van includes ambulance, motor home, or truck
- (3) Heavy transport vehicle includes armored car, dump truck, fire truck, panel truck, semi, tow truck, tractor trailer, 18-wheeler
- (4) A special all-terrain vehicle (ATV) or motor vehicle designed primarily for off-road use includes snowmobile, go cart, dirt bike, race car, three-wheeler, four-wheeler, golf cart, dune buggy
- (5) Motor vehicle includes passenger vehicle (private)

1. Use of the Index and Tabular List

The Classification provides a Table of land transport accidents in Volume 3, Section II. This table is referenced with any land transport accident if the mode of transport is known. Since the Index does not always provide a complete code, reference to Volume 1, Chapter XX is required.

For V01-V09, the fourth character indicates whether a pedestrian was injured in a nontraffic accident, traffic accident, or unspecified whether traffic or nontraffic accident.

For V10-V79, the fourth character represents the status of the victim, i.e., whether the decedent was driver, passenger, etc. For each means of transportation, there is a different set of fourth characters. Each means of transportation is preceded by its set of fourth characters in Volume 1.

- Car overturned, killing driver V485

In the Index refer to:

Overturning

- transport vehicle NEC (see also Accident, transport) V89.9

Accident

- transport (involving injury to) (see also Table of land transport accidents) V99

In the Table of land transport accidents, select the intersection of:

Under **Victim and mode of transport**, select

Occupant of:

- car (automobile)

Under **In collision with or involved in**: select

Noncollision transport accident

The code is V48.-. From Volume 1 the fourth character is 5, driver injured in traffic accident.

- Auto collision with animal V409

In the Index refer to:

Collision (accidental) NEC (see also Accident, transport) V89.9

Accident

- transport (involving injury to) (see also Table of land transport accidents) V99

In the Table of land transport accidents, select the intersection of:

Under **Victim and mode of transport**, select

Occupant of:

- car (automobile)

Under **In collision with or involved in**: select

Pedestrian or animal

The code is V40.-. From Volume 1, determine the fourth character is 9, unspecified car occupant injured in traffic accident.

## 2. Classifying accidents as traffic or nontraffic.

If an event is unspecified as to whether it is a traffic or nontraffic accident, it is assumed to be:

- a. A traffic accident when the event is classifiable to categories V02-V04, V10-V82 and V87.
- b. A nontraffic accident when the event is classifiable to categories V83-V86. These vehicles are designed primarily for off-road use.
- c. Consider category V05 to be unspecified whether traffic or nontraffic if no place is indicated or if the place is railroad (tracks).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

I (a) Laceration lung S273  
 (b)  
 (c) Accident &V575

MOD II  
 A 

Accident	Truck struck bridge	Driver
----------	---------------------	--------

Code to occupant of pick-up truck or van injured in collision with fixed or stationary object, driver. When a motor vehicle strikes another vehicle or object, assume the collision occurred on the highway unless otherwise indicated.

I (a) Fractured skull S029  
 (b)  
MOD II &V866

A 

Accident	Farm	Dune buggy overturned-passenger
----------	------	---------------------------------

Code to passenger of all-terrain or other off road motor vehicle injured in nontraffic accident.

I (a) Drowning T751 &V863  
MOD II

A 

Accident	Snowmobile ran off road and went into pond
----------	--

Code to unspecified occupant of all-terrain or other off road motor vehicle injured in traffic accident. Code as traffic accident since the accident originated on the road.

3. Status of victim

- a. General coding instructions relating to transport accidents are in Volume 1, Chapter XX. Refer to these instructions for clarification of the status of the victim when not clearly stated.

I (a) Multiple internal injuries T065  
 (b) Crushed by car T147 &V031

Code to pedestrian injured in collision with car, pick-up truck or van, traffic. Refer to Volume 1, Chapter XX, instruction 3, Crushed by car. The victim is classified as a pedestrian. Refer to Table of land transports. Victim and mode of transport, pedestrian, in collision (with) car. Refer to Volume 1 for fourth character.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

- b. In classifying motor vehicle traffic accidents, a victim of less than 14 years of age is assumed to be a passenger provided there is evidence the decedent was an occupant of the motor vehicle. A statement such as “thrown from car,” “fall from,” “struck head on dashboard,” “drowning,” or “carbon monoxide poisoning” is sufficient.

Female, 4 years old

- I (a) Fractured skull S029
- (b) Struck head on windshield when car &V476
- (c) struck tree fell across road

Code to car occupant injured in collision with fixed or stationary object, passenger (V476).

- c. When transport accident descriptions do not specify the victim as being a vehicle occupant and the victim is described as:

pedestrian	versus (vs)	any vehicle (car, truck, etc.)
any vehicle (car, truck, etc.)	versus (vs)	pedestrian

classify the victim as a pedestrian (V01-V99).

4. Coding categories V01-V89

- a. When drowning occurs as a result of a motor vehicle accident NOS, code as noncollision transport accident. The assumption is the motor vehicle ran off the highway into a body of water. If drowning results from a specified type of motor vehicle accident, code the appropriate E-code for the specified type of motor vehicle accident.

I (a) Drowning T751 &V589

MOD II

A

Accident	Street	Truck accident
----------	--------	----------------

Refer to Table of land transports. Code to occupant of truck injured in noncollision transport accident, unspecified.

I (a) Drowning T751 &V435

MOD II

A

Accident	Street	Driver-2 car collision
----------	--------	------------------------

Refer to Table of land transports. Code to occupant of car injured in collision with car, driver.

b. When falls from transport vehicles occur, apply the following instructions:

- (1) Consider a transport vehicle to be in motion unless there is clear indication the vehicle was not in transit. Refer to Table of land transport accidents, specified type of vehicle reported, noncollision. Refer to Volume 1 for appropriate fourth character.

	I	(a) Multiple injuries		T07
<u>MOD</u>	II			&V583
A		Accident	Home	Fell from truck in driveway

Refer to Table of land transports under Victim and mode of transport. Select occupant of pickup truck, noncollision transport accident, (V54.-). Refer to Volume 1 for fourth character and select 3, unspecified occupant of pickup truck, nontraffic accident.

- (2) Consider a transport vehicle to be stationary when statements such as these are reported :
- (a) When alighting, boarding, entering, leaving, exiting, getting in or out of vehicle
- (b) Stated as stationary, parked, not in transit, not in motion

	I	(a) Head injury		S099
<u>MOD</u>	II			&V784
A		Accident	Street	Fell alighting from bus

Refer to Table of land transports accidents under Victim and mode of transport. Select occupant of bus, noncollision transport accident, (V78.-). Refer to Volume 1 for fourth character and select 4, person injured while boarding or alighting.

	I	(a) Head injury		S099
<u>MOD</u>	II			&V892
A		Accident	Street	Fell on curb as he was exiting his daughter's vehicle

Refer to Table of land transport accidents under Victim and mode of transport. Select occupant of motor vehicle (traffic), noncollision transport accident (V892).

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents

Part J

I (a) Head injury S099  
MOD II &W17

A

Accident Street Fell from parked car

Code as indexed under Fall, from, vehicle, stationary (W17).

5. Additional examples

I (a) Fractures of ribs S223  
(b)  
(c)

MOD II &V234

A Accident Driver of motorcycle that collided with taxicab

Code to motorcycle rider injured in collision with car, pick-up truck or van, driver (V234).

I (a) Third degree burns T303  
(b) Auto accident - car overturned &V489  
(c)

Code to car occupant injured in noncollision transport accident, unspecified (V489).

I (a) Fracture of ribs S223  
(b)  
(c)

MOD II &V892

A

Accident Street Vehicle Accident

Code to person injured in unspecified motor vehicle accident, traffic (V892).  
Code as motor vehicle accident since the accident occurred on the street.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

6. Occupant of special all-terrain or other motor vehicle designed primarily for off-road use, injured in transport accident (V86)

This category includes accidents involving an occupant of any off-road vehicle. The fourth character indicates whether the decedent was injured in a nontraffic or traffic accident. Unless stated to the contrary, these accidents are assumed to be nontraffic.

- I (a) Multiple injuries T07
- (b) Driver of snowmobile that collided with auto &V860

Code to driver of all-terrain or other off-road motor vehicle injured in traffic accident since the collision occurred with an automobile.

- I (a) Injuries of head S099
- (b) Fracture both legs T025
- (c) Driver of ATV &V865

Code to driver of all-terrain or other off-road motor vehicle injured in nontraffic accident.

- I (a) Head injuries S099
- (b) Overturning snowmobile &V869

Code to unspecified occupant of all-terrain or other off-road motor vehicle injured in nontraffic accident.

- I (a) Fracture skull S029
- (b) ATV accident &V869

Code to unspecified occupant of all-terrain or other off-road motor vehicle injured in nontraffic accident (V869)

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents

Part J

7. Traffic accident of specified type but victim's mode of transport unknown (V87)  
Nontraffic accident of specified type but victim's mode of transport unknown (V88)

a. If more than one type of vehicle is mentioned, do not make any assumptions as to which vehicle was occupied by the victim unless the vehicles are the same. Instead, code to the appropriate categories V87-V88. Statements such as these do not indicate status of victim:

- Auto (passenger) vs. truck
- Car vs. truck-driver
- Driver, car vs. truck
- Passenger car vs. truck
- Car vs. truck, driver
- Driver-car vs. truck

- I (a) Intrathoracic injury S279  
 (b)  
 (c) Auto vs. motor bike accident &V870

Do not make any assumption as to which vehicle the victim was occupying.  
Using the Index, code:

Accident

- transport (involving injury to) (see also Table of land transport accidents) V99
- - person NEC (unknown means of transportation) (in) V99
- - - collision (between)
- - - - car (with)
- - - - - two- or three-wheeled motor vehicle (traffic) V87.0

- I (a) Driver - collision of car and bus V873  
 (b)

Do not make any assumption as to which vehicle the victim was driving. Using the Index, code:

Accident

- transport (involving injury to) (see also Table of land transport accidents) V99
- - person NEC (unknown means of transportation) (in) V99
- - - collision (between)
- - - - car (with)
- - - - - bus (traffic) V87.3

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

---

b. If reported types of vehicles are not indexed under Accident, transport, person, collision, code V877 for traffic and V887 for nontraffic.

- I (a) Bus and pick-up truck collision, driver V877
- (b)

Do not make any assumption as to which vehicle the victim was driving. Collision between bus and pick-up is not indexed under Accident, transport, person, collision. Code V877.

8. Water transport accidents (V90-V94)

The fourth character subdivision indicates the type of watercraft. Refer to Volume 1, Chapter XX, Water transport accidents for a list of the fourth character subdivisions.

- I (a) Drowning T751 &V929
  - (b) Fell over-board
- MOD II
- A 

Accident
----------

Code drowning, due to fall overboard. Use fourth character “9,” unspecified watercraft.

9. Air and space transport accidents (V95-V97)

For air and space transport accidents, the victim is only classified as an occupant. Military aircraft is coded to V958, Other aircraft accidents injuring occupant, since a military aircraft is not considered to be either a private aircraft or a commercial aircraft. Where death of military personnel is reported with no specification as to whether the airplane was a commercial or private craft, code V958.

10. Miscellaneous coding instructions (V01-V99)

- a. When multiple deaths occur from the same transportation accident, all the certifications should be examined, and when appropriate, the information obtained from one may be applied to all. There may be other information available such as newspaper articles. A query should be sent to the certifier if necessary to obtain the information.
- b. When classifying accidents which involve more than one kind of transport, use the following order of precedence:

aircraft and spacecraft (V95-V97)  
watercraft (V90-V94)  
other modes of transport (V01-V89, V98-V99)

- I (a) Multiple fractures and internal injuries T029 T148
- (b) Driver of car killed when a private plane &V973
- (c) collided with car on highway after forced landing.

Code to person on ground injured in air transport accident following above order of precedence. Refer to Index under Accident, transport, aircraft, person, on ground.

- c. When no external cause information is reported and the place of occurrence of the injury was highway, street, road, or alley, assign the external cause code to person injured in unspecified motor vehicle accident occurring on the highway.

- I (a) Head injuries and fracture S099 S029
- MOD II &V892

A

Accident
----------

Highway
---------

Code to person injured in unspecified motor vehicle accident, traffic since the accident occurred on the highway.

## d. Homicide, suicide or undetermined in manner of death

- (1) When “undetermined” is reported in the manner of death box with transport accidents, code the external cause as accidental unless a statement on the certificate **clearly establishes** an investigation has not determined whether accidental, homicidal, or suicidal.

	I (a) Multiple head injuries	S097	
	(b) Car ran off cliff	&V489	
<u>MOD</u>	II		
C	<table border="1"><tr><td>Undetermined</td></tr></table>	Undetermined	
Undetermined			

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as unspecified car occupant injured in noncollision transport accident. Do not code to undetermined since there is no statement that clearly establishes an investigation resulted in an undetermined verdict.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Multiple head injuries	S097	
8	(b) Car ran off cliff	&Y32	
<u>MOD</u>	II Police report indicates possible suicide or accident. Verdict		
C	pending.		
	<table border="1"><tr><td>Undetermined</td></tr></table>	Undetermined	
Undetermined			

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as indexed under Crash, transport vehicle, motor NEC, undetermined since there is a statement, which clearly establishes an investigation of “undetermined intent,” is pending.

- (2) When “homicide” is reported in the manner of death box with transport accidents, code the external cause as accidental unless a statement on the certificate **clearly establishes** an intentional act of homicide occurred.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Multiple traumatic injuries	T07	
8	(b) Decedent run over by vehicle several times in parking lot	&Y03	
<u>MOD</u>	II		
H	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>	Homicide	
Homicide			

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as indexed under Assault, crashing of motor vehicle. Homicide is coded since there was evidence the victim was repeatedly run over.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

	I	(a) Multiple traumatic injuries	T07			
		(b) Struck by car while walking on side of road	&V031			
<u>MOD</u>	II					
H		<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>Homicide</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <tr> <td>Hit and run</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <tr> <td>Driver left scene of accident</td> </tr> </table>	Homicide	Hit and run	Driver left scene of accident	
Homicide						
Hit and run						
Driver left scene of accident						

Code I(a) as indexed. Code pedestrian struck by car on I(b). Do not code as homicide since there is no statement of intentional homicide.

- (3) When “suicide” is reported in the manner of death box with transport accidents, code the external cause qualified as suicide.

e. Garbage /dump truck accidents

When accidents involving garbage/dump trucks are reported and information indicates the mechanism of the body or truck bed caused the injuries, assign the E-code based on reported information. Usually, the statement of events will be falling on, struck by, or caught in and external codes W20, W22, or W23 will be used.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Crushed chest	S280		
4		(b) Dump truck body fell on chest	&W20		
<u>MOD</u>	II				
A		<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>Accident</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <tr> <td>Street</td> </tr> </table>	Accident	Street	
Accident					
Street					

Code external cause to Struck (by), object, falling, W20.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Fracture skull	S029		
4		(b) Struck by dump truck body	&W22		
<u>MOD</u>	II				
A		<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>Accident</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <tr> <td>Street</td> </tr> </table>	Accident	Street	
Accident					
Street					

Code external cause to Struck (by), object, W22.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Crushed chest	S280		
4		(b) Caught in compactor of garbage truck	&W23		
<u>MOD</u>	II				
A		<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>Accident</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <tr> <td>Street</td> </tr> </table>	Accident	Street	
Accident					
Street					

Code external cause to Caught, between, objects, W23.

## Part K

K. Falls1. Other fall on same level (W18)

Code W18 if other or additional information is reported about the fall such as:

Fell from standing height  
Fell moving from wheelchair to bed  
Fell striking head  
Fell striking object  
Fell to floor  
Fell while transferring from chair to bed  
Fell while walking  
Lost balance and fell

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Fracture right hip	S720
0	II Lost balance and fell to floor	&W18
<u>MOD</u>		
A	<input type="checkbox"/> Accident	<input type="checkbox"/> Home

Code external cause to other fall same level.

2. Unspecified fall (W19)

Code W19, unspecified fall, for terms such as:

Fall  
Fell  
Fell at a place

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Fracture right hip	S720
1	II Fell at nursing home	&W19
<u>MOD</u>		
A	<input type="checkbox"/> Accident	<input type="checkbox"/> Nursing Home

Code external cause to fall, unspecified.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Natural and Environmental Factors**

---

**Part L**

L. Natural and environmental factors

1. Lightning

Code X33 only when the decedent is injured from direct contact with lightning.

Code injuries, such as stroke or shock, due to direct contact with lightning to T750.

Code burn(s) due to lightning to burn(s) (T200-T289, T300-T319).

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Shock	T750
9		(b) Struck by lightning	T750 &X33

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Burns	T300
0		(b) House fire	&X00
		(c) House struck by lightning	

When a secondary fire results from lightning, code to the fire. Do not enter a code for lightning.

2. Exposure (cold) and hypothermia

When exposure (cold) or hypothermia is reported anywhere on the record with another stated or implied external cause, code the nature of injury code (T68-T699, T758) and the E-code for the exposure (cold) or hypothermia (X31, X39). Do not modify the nature of injury code for exposure NOS. Ampersand the external cause code for the other event.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Exposure	T758	X39
9		(b) Intoxication with hip fx	F100	S720
		(c)		
	II		&X59	

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Hypothermia with drowning	T68	X31	T751	&W74
9		(b)				
		(c)				

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Natural and Environmental Factors**

**Part L**

---

<u>Place</u> 4	I (a) Exposure (b) (c)	T758 X83		
<u>MOD</u> S	II Multiple fractures	T029 &X80		
	<table border="1"><tr><td>Suicide</td><td>Jumped from bridge</td></tr></table>	Suicide	Jumped from bridge	
Suicide	Jumped from bridge			
<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Exposure to cold (b) (c)	T699 X31		
	II MVA	&V892		
<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Exposure and hypothermia (b) Unconsciousness (c)	T758 X31 T68 R402		
<u>MOD</u> A	II Blunt trauma to head	S099 &W18 T758		
	<table border="1"><tr><td>Accident</td><td>Exposed to elements after falling and striking head</td></tr></table>	Accident	Exposed to elements after falling and striking head	
Accident	Exposed to elements after falling and striking head			

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Firearms and Firearm Injuries**

**Part M**

M. Firearms and firearm injuries

1. Coding specific types of firearms

The type of firearm involved in a death is identified at the three character level. Use the following guide to identify the type of firearm:

<b>Type Firearm</b>	<b>Accidental</b>	<b>Intentional Self-harm</b>	<b>Assault</b>	<b>Undetermined Intent</b>
<b>Handgun</b> 25 Caliber 32 Caliber 38 Caliber 45 Caliber 357 Magnum Pistol Revolver Saturday night special	W32	X72	X93	Y22
<b>Rifle, shotgun, larger firearm</b> 25.06 (25 ought 6) 30.6 (30 ought 6) 30/30 308 AK47 M1 (carbine) M14 M16 Machine gun Rifle (army) (hunting) (military) Shotgun (8, 10, 12, 16, 20, 410 gauge, buckshot)	W33	X73	X94	Y23
<b>Other and unspecified firearms</b> 22 Caliber gun 30 Caliber gun Airgun BB gun Pellet gun Pellet pistol Very pistol (Flare)	W34	X74	X95	Y24

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Firearms and Firearm Injuries**

**Part M**

2. External cause code

a.

<u>When reported as</u>	<u>Code</u>
“playing with gun” NOS or “cleaning gun” NOS	external cause as accidental (W32-W34)
“playing Russian roulette” (whether or not stated suicide)	external cause as handgun accident (W32)

Place I (a) Gunshot wound of femur S711 &W34  
9 (b) Cleaning gun

Code as accidental since reported due to cleaning gun.

Place I (a) Gunshot wound chest S219 &W32  
9 (b) Self-inflicted while playing Russian roulette

MOD II

S

Suicide
---------

Code as handgun accident since Russian roulette is reported.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Firearms and Firearm Injuries**

**Part M**

3. Nature of injury code

a.

<u>When</u>	<u>Is reported due to</u>	<u>Code</u>
Injury NOS	any caliber bullet gun went off pulled trigger specified firearm	the nature of injury to wound

Place I (a) Injury  
9 (b) Rifle

T141  
&W33

b.

<u>When reported as</u>	<u>Code</u>
Gunshot or bullet entering and/or exiting a site	the nature of injury to wound of site(s)

Place I (a) Bullet entering chest &  
9 (b) exiting back

S219 &W34 S212

c.

<u>When reported as</u>	<u>Code</u>
Bullet (to site) Gunshot (to site) Shooting, shot (to site) Shotgun blast (to site)	the nature of injury to wound (of site(s))

Place I (a) Shot in head  
9

S019 &W34

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Firearms and Firearm Injuries**

---

**Part M**

4. Other firearm examples:

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Gunshot wound chest	S219	&Y24
9		(b) Self-inflicted		

Code as undetermined gunshot since self-inflicted is reported and is unspecified as accidental or intentional.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Gunshot injury chest	S219	&W34	S273
9		(b) and lung			

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Child Abuse, Battering and Other Maltreatment**

---

**Part N**

N. Child abuse, battering and other maltreatment (Y070-Y079)

Code to Child battering and other maltreatment (Y070-Y079) if the age of the decedent is under 18 years and the cause of death meets one of the following criteria:

1. The certifier specifies abuse, battering, beating, or other maltreatment, even if homicide is not specified.

Male, 3 years  
I (a) Traumatic head injuries S099  
(b)  
(c)  
MOD II &Y079  
H 

Homicide	Home	Deceased had been beaten
----------	------	--------------------------

2. The certifier specifies homicide and injury or injuries with indication of more than one episode of injury, i.e., current injury coupled with old or healed injury consistent with a history of child abuse.

Male, 1-1/2 years  
I (a) Anoxic encephalopathy G931  
(b) Subdural hematoma S065  
(c) Old and recent contusions of body T910 T090  
MOD II &Y079  
H 

Homicide
----------

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Child Abuse, Battering and Other Maltreatment**

**Part N**

3. The certifier specifies homicide and multiple injuries consistent with an assumption of battering or beating, if assault by a peer, intruder, or by someone unknown to the child cannot be reasonably inferred from the reported information.

	Female, 1 year			
	I (a) Massive internal bleeding	T148		
	(b) Multiple internal injuries	T065		
	(c)			
<u>MOD</u>	II Injury occurred by child being struck	T149	&Y079	
H	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>	Homicide		
Homicide				

**Exception:**

Deaths at ages under 18 years for which the cause of death certification specifies homicide and an injury occurring as an isolated episode, with no indication of previous mistreatment, should not be classified to Y070-Y079. This excludes from Y070-Y079 deaths due to injuries specified to be the result of events such as shooting, stabbing, hanging, fighting, or involvement in robbery or other crime, because it cannot be assumed such injuries were inflicted simply in the course of punishment or cruel treatment.

	Female, 1 year				
<u>Place</u>	I (a) Hypovolemic shock	T794			
0	(b) Perforating laceration of L. ventricle of heart	S268			
	(c) Multiple stab wounds thorax	S217	&X99		
<u>MOD</u>	II Stabbed with kitchen knife by mother	T141			
H	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>	Homicide	<table border="1"><tr><td>Home</td></tr></table>	Home	
Homicide					
Home					

## SECTION V

### Part O

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Guides for Differentiating Between Effects of External Causes Classifiable to Chapters I - XVIII and Chapters XIX

---

#### O. Guides for differentiating between effects of external causes classifiable to Chapters I - XVIII and Chapter XIX

Categories in Chapters I-XVIII and XIX are mutually exclusive. Where provision has been made for coding effects of an external cause to Chapters I-XVIII, do not use a nature of injury code.

The effects of external causes classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII are primarily those associated with drugs, medicaments and biological substances, surgical procedures, and other medical procedures. Refer to Section V, Part R, Complications of medical and surgical care (Y40-Y84).

A limited number of conditions that can result from other external causes, e.g., certain localized effects of fumes, vapors and nonmedicinal chemical substances and respiratory conditions from aspiration of foreign substances are also classified to Chapters I-XVIII. It is intended that Chapters I-XVIII be used to identify the localized effects and the substance be identified by the external cause code in Chapter XX.

To determine if the conditions reported due to external causes, other than drugs, medicaments, and biological substances, surgical procedures, and other medical procedures, are classified to localized effects in Chapters I-XVIII or to the nature of injury in Chapter XIX – look up the stated condition in the Index and scan the listing under this condition for qualifying terms that relate to the reported external cause. For example, to determine whether pneumonia due to aspiration of vomitus should be coded to Chapter X or to Chapter XIX, look up “Pneumonia, aspiration, due to, food (regurgitated), milk, vomit.” This determination cannot be made by looking up “Aspiration.” Where there is provision in the Index for coding a condition due to an external cause to Chapter I-XVIII, take the external cause into account if it modifies the coding.

I (a) Pneumonia	&J690
(b) Aspiration of vomitus	W78

Code Pneumonia, aspiration due to, vomit. Code “aspiration of vomitus” as an external cause code only.

I (a) Pneumonia	&J690
(b) Aspiration	W80
(c) Cancer of lung	C349

Code Pneumonia, aspiration. Code I(b) “aspiration” as an external cause code only.

**SECTION V**

**Part O**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Guides for Differentiating Between Effects of External  
Causes Classifiable to Chapters I - XVIII and Chapters XIX**

---

- I (a) Pneumonia &J690
- (b) Asphyxia W80
- (c) Aspiration

Code Pneumonia, aspiration. Code I(b) external cause code only.

- I (a) Pneumonia &J680
- (b) Smoke inhalation X00
- II House fire

Code Pneumonia, in (due to), fumes and vapors (J680). Code I(b) external cause code only.

- I (a) Acute pulmonary edema &J681
- (b) Inhaled gasoline fumes X46

Code Edema, pulmonary, acute, due to, chemicals fumes or vapors (J681). Code I(b) external cause code only.

- Place
- I (a) Pneumonia J189
  - 9 (b) Cardiac arrest I469
  - (c) Aspiration of vomitus T179 &W78

Code each entity as indexed. Do not code the pneumonia on I(a) due to aspiration of vomitus since it is reported due to another condition.

P. Threats to breathing

Certain effects of external causes can be classified to more than one nature of injury code depending on the type of external cause. Some of these effects are “anoxia,” “asphyxia,” “aspiration,” “choking,” “compression of neck,” “obstruction of a site,” “strangulation,” “stricture of neck,” and “suffocation.”

The most frequently reported external causes which result in these effects are “aspiration, ingestion, and inhalation of objects and substances,” “drowning,” “fires,” “fumes, gases and vapors,” “hanging,” “mechanical strangulation and suffocation,” and “submersion.”

Refer to the following pages containing tables that are to be used as guides in coding these types of external causes and effects.

In general, if the specific external cause is not in Tables 1-5, it will most likely be in Table 6, which contains the most frequently reported external causes which result in asphyxia, suffocation, etc. If not in any of the tables, code the effect as indexed.

Table	Title
Table 1	Drowning and submersion
Table 2	*Hanging and mechanical strangulation (by external means)
Table 3	Fires (includes burns, gases, fumes in association with burns and fires)
Table 4	Ingestion, inhalation of gases, fumes, vapors (without fires, burns)
Table 5	Compression chest, crushed chest by external means
Table 6	Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**\*NOTE:** Interpret mechanical strangulation as strangulation caused by external means to the exterior of the body.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 1.** Drowning and submersion

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	anoxia asphyxia strangulation suffocation	drowning submersion	upper line T751 and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line T751 only.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported on the same line with</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	anoxia asphyxia strangulation suffocation	drowning submersion	T751 and the appropriate external cause code.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 1.** Drowning and submersion

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
<u>Place</u> 8 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Drowning (c) II Accident      Drowned while swimming in river	T751 &W69 T751 T751
	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Strangulation (c) Drowning II Accident      Lake      Boat overturned	T751 &V909 T751 T751
<u>Place</u> 8 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Anoxia (b) Drowning (c) II Accident      Fell into lake	T751 &W70 T751
	I (a) Drowning – asphyxia (b) (c) II Accident	T751 &W74

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 2.** Hanging and mechanical strangulation (by external means)

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to or with</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	asphyxia strangulation suffocation	hanging mechanical strangulation (by external means) compression of neck	upper line T71 and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line T71 only.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to or with</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	compression of neck stricture of neck	hanging mechanical strangulation (by external means) suffocation	upper line T71 only.  lower line T71 and the appropriate external cause code.

**Table 2.** Hanging and mechanical strangulation (by external means)

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>	
<u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> S	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Hanging (c) II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Suicide</div><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Home</div></div>	T71 &X70 T71	2.1
<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Suffocation (c) Crib sheet II	T71 &W75 T71	2.1
<u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> S	I (a) Aspiration of vomitus (b) Strangulation (c) Hanging II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Suicide</div><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Home</div><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Hanged self</div></div>	T179 W78 T71 &X70 T71 T71	2.1
	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Compression of neck (c) Auto accident II	T71 &V499 T71	2.1
<u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> H	I (a) Compression of neck (b) Hanging (c) II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Homicide</div><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Hanging</div></div>	T71 T71 &X91 T71	2.2

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 3.** Fires (includes burns, gases, fumes in association with burns and fires)

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to or with</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	asphyxia suffocation	ingestion, inhalation  with mention of a fire (specified)	of gas fumes, or vapors (carbon monoxide, products of combustion, smoke)  the asphyxia, suffocation to the nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, vapor and the appropriate external cause code for the fire where required.  lower line to the appropriate nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, vapor.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	asphyxia suffocation	burns NOS (any degree) (any percentage) (any site)	upper line T300 and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line as indexed.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
3	asphyxia suffocation	fire NOS specified fire	upper line T300 and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line blank.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported with</b>	<b>Code</b>
4	asphyxia suffocation	fire NOS specified fire	the asphyxia, suffocation T300, followed by the appropriate external cause code for the fire.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 3.** Fires (includes burns, gases, fumes in association with burns and fires)

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
<u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Suffocation T599 &X00 (b) Inhalation of products of combustion T599 (c) II T599 <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Inhaled fumes in house fire</div> </div>	3.1
<u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Suffocation T598 &X09 (b) Smoke inhalation T598 (c) Fire II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> </div>	3.1
<u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Asphyxia – carbon monoxide T58 &X00 (b) (c) II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Home</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">House fire</div> </div>	3.1
<u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Asphyxia T300 &X04 (b) Burns of chest and face T210 T200 (c) II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Home</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Ignition of kerosene</div> </div>	3.2
<u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Suffocation T300 &X00 (b) 3° burns T303 (c) II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Burning Bldg.</div> </div>	3.2
<u>Place</u> 0	I (a) Asphyxia, fire in house T300 &X00 (b) (c) II	3.4

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 4.** Ingestion, inhalation of gases, fumes, vapors (without fires, burns)

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	asphyxia suffocation	ingestion inhalation <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span> of gas, fumes, or vapors	upper line to the appropriate nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, or vapor and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line to the appropriate nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, or vapor.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>On the same line with</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	asphyxia suffocation	ingestion inhalation <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span> of gas fumes, or vapors	the appropriate nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, or vapor and the appropriate external cause code.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 4.** Ingestion, inhalation of gases, fumes, vapors (without fires, burns)

<b>Examples</b>				<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
<u>Place</u> 0	I	(a) Asphyxia (b) Inhalation of carbon monoxide	T58 &X67 T58	4.1
<u>MOD</u> S	II	(c) <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Suicide</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Home</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Inhaled car exhaust fumes in garage</div> </div>	T58	
<u>Place</u> 0	I	(a) Suffocation by inhalation (b) of propane gas	T598 &X47	4.2
<u>MOD</u> A	II	(c) <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Home</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Inhaled propane gas</div> </div>	T598	

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing****Part P****Table 5.** Compression chest, crushed chest by external means

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	asphyxia suffocation	crushed chest	upper line S280 plus the appropriate external cause code.  lower line S280.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	asphyxia suffocation	compression chest	upper line S299 plus the appropriate external cause code.  lower line S299.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 5.** Compression chest, crushed chest by external means

<b>Examples</b>			<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>	
<u>MOD</u> A	I	(a) Asphyxia (b) Crushed chest (c) MVA	S280 & V892 S280	5.1
	II	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Street</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">MVA</div> </div>		
<u>Place</u> 7 <u>MOD</u> A	I	(a) Suffocation (b) Compression chest (c) Tractor accident	S299 & W30 S299	5.2
	II	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Farm</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Tractor overturned on victim</div> </div>		

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

Instruction	When	Is reported due to	Code
1	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	aspiration NOS ingestion NOS inhalation NOS  or aspiration ingestion inhalation	upper line to T17 plus appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).  lower line to T17 with appropriate fourth character.
2	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	foreign body in a site	upper line to T17 plus appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).  lower line to T17 with appropriate fourth character.
3	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	foreign body NOS	upper line to T17 plus appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).  lower line blank.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Examples</b>					<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Strangulation	T179	&W79	6.1
		(b) Aspiration of food	T179		
	II	(c)			
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Obstruction of pharynx	T172	&W79	6.2
		(b) Bolus of meat in throat	T172		
	II	(c)			
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Obstruction of trachea	T174	&W79	6.3
		(b) Bolus of meat			
	II	(c)			
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Asphyxia	T179	&W78	6.3
		(b) Aspiration	T179		
	II	(c) Vomitus			

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported on the same line with</b>	<b>Code</b>
4	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	aspiration NOS ingestion NOS inhalation NOS  <b>or</b> aspiration ingestion inhalation } of substances or objects	on the same line, T17 with appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).
5	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	foreign body in a site	on the same line, T17 with appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).
6	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	foreign body NOS	on the same line, T17 with appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Examples</b>				<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
<u>Place</u> 9	I  II	(a) Asphyxia by aspiration of vomitus (b) (c)	T179 &W78	6.4
<u>Place</u> 9	I  II	(a) Choked by peanut obstructing (b) trachea (c)	T174 &W79	6.5
<u>Place</u> 9	I  II	(a) Choked on chicken bone (b) (c)	T179 &W79	6.6

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
7	aspiration NOS aspiration of substances strangulation NOS strangulation by substances	a disease	upper line T17 plus appropriate fourth character and the appropriate W78, W79, W80 if not previously coded.  lower line as indexed.
8	aspiration NOS	vomiting	upper line T179, W78.  lower line R11.
9	aspiration NOS ingestion NOS inhalation NOS  or aspiration } of ingestion } substances inhalation } or objects	injuries (other than those classified to T17-) and/or an external cause (other than W78, W79, W80)	upper line T17 plus appropriate fourth character. Also, code the appropriate W78, W79, W80 if not previously coded.  lower line as indexed.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Aspiration (b) C.V.A (c) II	T179 &W80 I64 6.7
<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Aspiration (b) Vomiting (c) II	T179 &W78 R11 6.8
<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Choked (b) Aspiration of blood (c) Crushed chest II Car vs. Ped	T179 W80 T179 S280 &V031 6.9
<u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Aspiration (b) Drowning (c) II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Accident</div>	T179 W80 T751 &W74 6.9

Q. Poisoning

When poisoning (any) is reported, code nature of injury code and external cause code for the substance.

When poisoning by fumes, gas, liquids, or solids is reported, refer to Index under "Poisoning (acute)" to determine the nature of injury code for the substance.

To determine the external cause code when a poisonous substance is ingested, inhaled, injected, or taken, refer to the description of such circumstances (acts) for example, Ingestion, Inhalation, or Took.

When a condition is reported due to poisoning and the Index provides a code for the condition qualified as "toxic," use this code. If the Index does not provide a code for the condition qualified as "toxic," code the condition as indexed.

1. Poisoning by substances other than drugs

Assume poisoning (self- inflicted) by a substance to be accidental unless otherwise indicated.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Aplastic anemia	D612
9		(b) Benzene poisoning	T521 &X46

Code I(a) Anemia, aplastic, toxic. Code I(b) to nature of injury and external cause code for benzene poisoning from Table of Drugs and Chemicals.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Toxic poisoning	T659 &X46
9		(b) Drank turpentine	T528

Code I(a), nature of injury code for poison NOS and the most specific external cause code (turpentine) taking into account the entire certificate. Code nature of injury for turpentine on I(b).

a. Carbon monoxide poisoning

Code carbon monoxide poisoning from motor vehicle exhaust gas to noncollision motor vehicle accident (traffic) according to type of motor vehicle involved unless there is indication the motor vehicle was not in transit. Consider statements of “sleeping in car,” “sitting in parked car,” “in parked car” or place stated as “garage” to indicate the motor vehicle was “not in transit.” Assume “not in transit” in self-harm (intentional) and self-inflicted cases.

I (a) Carbon monoxide poisoning	T58 &V892
(b)	
(c)	
II Motor vehicle exhaust gas	T58

In the Table of land transport accidents, select the intersection of:

Under **Victim and mode of transport**, select  
Occupant of:  
- motor vehicle (traffic)

Under **In collision with or involved in**: select  
Noncollision transport accident V89.2

Code external cause code to person injured in unspecified motor vehicle accident, traffic.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Poisoned by carbon monoxide	T58 &X47
9	II Sitting in parked car	

Code external cause code to carbon monoxide poisoning, which includes poisoning by gas, motor exhaust, not in transit.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Carbon monoxide inhalation	T58 &X67
5	II Found in garage. Suicide.	

Code external cause code to intentional self-harm by carbon monoxide poisoning, which includes poisoning by gas, motor exhaust, not in transit.

b. Inhalation and sniffing sprays and aerosol substances

When inhalation of sprays, aerosol substances, etc. is reported, code to the appropriate accidental poisoning category for the external cause.

**Exceptions:**

“Glue sniffing” and “cocaine sniffing” are indexed to mental and behavioral disorders due to psychoactive substance use (F182, F142).

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Toxicity	T659	&X46		
0		(b) Inhalation of aerosol substance	T659			
		(c)				
<u>MOD</u>	II	Breathed “PAM” (freon) in plastic bag	T535			
A		<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td>Accident</td></tr></table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td>Home</td></tr></table>	Accident	Home		
Accident						
Home						

Code I(a) the nature of injury code for toxicity as indexed. Code the external cause code to accidental inhalation of freon gas or spray (X46), the specific substance indicated by the certifier. Code the nature of injury code for aerosol on I(b) and for freon in Part II.

c. Intoxication by certain substances or toxic poisoning due to disease

When ammonia intoxication ( $\text{NH}_3$ ), carbon dioxide intoxication ( $\text{CO}_2$ ), or toxic poisoning is reported due to a disease, **do not** code to poisoning. When due to a disease, code ammonia intoxication to R798, carbon dioxide intoxication to R068, and toxic poisoning to R688.

I	(a)	Ammonia intoxication	R798
	(b)	Cirrhosis of liver	K746

Code I(a) as indexed, Intoxication, ammonia, due to disease (R798).

I	(a)	Carbon dioxide intoxication	R068
	(b)	Chronic pulmonary emphysema	J439

Code I(a) as indexed, Intoxication, carbon dioxide, due to disease (R068).

I	(a)	Toxic poisoning	R688
	(b)	Gastroenteritis	K529

Code I(a) as indexed, Poisoning, toxic, from a disease (R688).

d. Condition qualified as “toxic” with poisoning reported

- (1) When a condition is qualified as “toxic” and there is indication of poisoning on the certificate, code the external cause code for the poisoning where the “toxic” is reported, followed by the condition code. If the Classification provides a code for the condition qualified as “toxic,” use this code. If no provision is made for qualifying the condition as toxic, code to the unspecified code for the condition.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Toxic nephritis	&X48 N144
9	II Organophosphate poisoning, accidental	T600

Code most specific external cause code on I(a) where toxic is reported followed by condition code for toxic nephritis as indexed. Code nature of injury for organophosphate in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Toxic GI hemorrhage	&X49 K922
9	(b) Carbolic acid	T540

Code most specific external cause code on I(a) where toxic is reported followed by condition code for GI hemorrhage as indexed. The Classification does not provide a code for GI hemorrhage qualified as toxic. Code nature of injury for carbolic acid on I(b).

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Toxic diarrhea	&X48 K521
9	II Rat poison	T604

Code most specific external cause code on I(a) where toxic is reported followed by condition code for toxic diarrhea as indexed. Code nature of injury for rat poison in Part II.

- (2) When a condition is qualified as “toxic” and there is no indication of poisoning on the certificate, code the condition as indexed to the unspecified code.

I (a) Toxic anemia	D612
--------------------	------

Code toxic anemia as indexed since there is no indication of poisoning on the certificate.

2. Poisoning by drugs

- a. When the following statements are reported, see Table of Drugs and Chemicals and code as accidental poisoning unless otherwise indicated.

Interpret all these statements to mean poisoning by drug:

Drug taken inadvertently  
Lethal (amount) (dose) (quantity) of a drug  
Overdose of drug  
Poisoning by a drug  
Toxic effects of a drug  
Toxic reaction to a drug  
Toxicity (of a site) by a drug  
Wrong dose taken accidentally  
Wrong drug given in error

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
9		(b) Digitalis toxicity	T460 &X44
		(c) Congestive heart failure	I500

Code digitalis toxicity to digitalis poisoning. Code nature of injury and external cause code for digitalis poisoning on I(b). Do not ampersand a disease condition when poisoning from a drug occurs while the drug is being administered for medical reasons.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Shock	R578
9		(b) Insulin overdose	T383 &X44
		(c) Diabetes	E149

Code I(a) shock, toxic since reported due to poisoning. Code insulin overdose to insulin poisoning. Code nature of injury and external cause code for insulin poisoning on I(b). Do not ampersand a disease condition when poisoning from a drug occurs while the drug is being administered for medical reasons.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Poisoning**

**Part Q**

---

- b. Interpret the term “intoxication by drug” to mean poisoning by drug unless indicated or stated to be due to drug therapy or as a result of treatment for a condition (refer to Section V, Part R, 1, (6), “Intoxication by drug” due to drug therapy).

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
	(b) Drug intoxication	T509 &X44
	II Ingested undetermined amount of drugs	T509

Code “drug intoxication” to poisoning when there is no indication the drug was given for therapy. Code I(b) nature of injury and external cause code for drug poisoning. Code nature of injury code for drug NOS in Part II.

- c. When poisoning by drug NOS is reported in Part I and a specified drug is reported in Part II, code the external cause code to the specified drug.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Took overdose of drug	T509 &X41
	II Overdose of barbiturates	T423

Code “took overdose of drug” as accidental unless otherwise specified. Code I(a) nature of injury for drug NOS and external cause code to the specified drug reported in Part II. Code nature of injury for barbiturates in Part II.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Poisoning**

**Part Q**

- d. When a condition is qualified as “toxic” or “drug induced” and there is indication of drug poisoning on the certificate, code the external cause code for the drug poisoning where the “toxic” or “drug induced” is reported, followed by the condition code. If the Classification provides a code for the condition qualified as “toxic” or “drug induced,” use this code. If no provision is made for qualifying the condition as “toxic” or “drug induced,” whichever applies, code to the unspecified code for the condition. Code the nature of injury code for poisoning by the specified drug.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Toxic hemolytic anemia	&X41	D594
	9		(b) Levodopa toxicity		T428

Code most specific external cause on I(a) where toxic is reported followed by condition code for toxic hemolytic anemia as indexed. Code nature of injury for levodopa on I(b).

When a condition is qualified as “toxic” and there is no indication of drug poisoning on the certificate, code the condition as indexed.

When a condition is qualified as “drug induced” and there is no mention of drug poisoning on the certificate, code as a complication of drug therapy (refer to Section V, Part R, 1, (5), “Drug induced” complications).

e. Poisoning by combination of drugs

- (1) When poisoning by a combination of drugs is stated or indicated to be accidental, intentional self-harm (suicide), or undetermined code as follows:

- (a) When poisoning by a combination of drugs classified to the same external cause code is reported, use that external cause code.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Doxepin and barbiturate overdose	T430	&X41	T423
	9					

Code external cause code to X41 since both doxepin and barbiturates are indexed to this code. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Doxepin and prozac overdose	T430	&X61	T432
	9					
<u>MOD</u>			Suicide			
S						

Code external cause code to X61 since both doxepin and prozac are indexed to this code. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

- (b) When poisoning from a single drug is reported in Part I with a combination of drugs in Part II, code the external cause code for the drug reported in Part I. Code the nature of injury for each drug reported.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Acute barbiturate intoxication	T423	&X41
9	II	Took unknown amount of	T423	T390
<u>MOD</u>		barbiturates and aspirin		

A

Accident
----------

Code external cause code to X41, accidental poisoning by barbiturates, the single drug reported in Part I. Code nature of injury for barbiturates on I(a) and for barbiturates and aspirin in Part II.

- (c) When poisoning by a combination of drugs classified to different external cause codes is reported and (b) does not apply, use the following external cause codes when the manner of death is reported as:

Accident ----- Code X44, Accidental poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances.

Intentional Self-harm -- Code X64, Intentional self-poisoning by  
(Suicide) and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances.

Undetermined ----- Code Y14, Poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances, undetermined intent.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Drug intoxication	T509	&X44
9		(b) Digitalis, cocaine	T460	T405

The external cause code for accidental poisoning by digitalis is X44 and for cocaine is X42. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44, Accidental poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Poisoning

Part Q

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Drug toxicity (b) Overdose of salicylates and seconal	T509 &X64 T390 T423
<u>MOD</u> S	II Overdose of drugs <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Suicide</div>	T509

The external cause code for intentional self-harm (suicide) by salicylates is X60 and for seconal, X61. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X64, Intentional self poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Darvon and promazine (b) intoxication	T404 &Y14 T433
<u>MOD</u> C	II Drug intoxication <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Undetermined</div>	T509

The external cause code for poisoning of undetermined intent by darvon is Y12 and for promazine, Y11. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code Y14, Poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances, undetermined intent. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

3. Percentage of drug(s) in blood

When a percentage (%) of any drug(s) in the blood is reported, code the nature of injury code for the drug if there is mention of drug poisoning elsewhere on the record.

When a complication is reported due to a percentage (%) of any drug(s), code as a complication of drug therapy unless otherwise indicated.

When a percentage (%) of any drug(s) in the blood is reported without mention of drug poisoning or a complication, do not enter a code for the drug.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Gunshot wound brain II .05 mg. barbiturates in blood	S069 &X74
<u>MOD</u> S	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Suicide</div>	

Since there is no mention of poisoning or a complication of the barbiturates, **do not** enter a code for the percentage of drug in the blood.

4. Poisoning by alcohol and drugs

When alcoholism or alcohol poisoning (any F10-, R780, R826, R893, T510-T519) is reported in Part I with drug poisoning in Part I, code the alcohol to the appropriate code (F10-, R780, R826, R893, T510-T519), the nature of injury code for the drug and code the appropriate external cause code for the drug preceded by an ampersand. If alcohol poisoning is reported, code the external cause code for alcohol also, but do not precede this code with an ampersand. Interpret the following statements to mean poisoning by alcohol and drugs and code the appropriate E-code for alcohol poisoning:

Alcohol and drug interaction  
Alcohol and drug synergism  
Combination of alcohol and drugs  
Combined action alcohol and drugs  
Combined alcohol and drug intoxication  
Combined effects of alcohol and drugs  
Combined overdose of alcohol and drugs  
Ingestion of combined overdose of alcohol and drugs  
Mixed alcohol and drug intoxication  
Mixed effects of alcohol and drugs  
Mixed overdose alcohol and drugs  
Synergistic effects of alcohol and drugs

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Combined effects of alcohol and drugs	T519 X45 T509 &X44
<u>MOD</u> A	II Ingested alcohol and drugs <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Accident</div>	T519 T509

Interpret I(a) as poisoning and code the nature of injury and external cause code for alcohol and drugs. Precede the E-code for drugs with an ampersand.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Alcohol intoxication (b) Barbiturate intoxication	F100 T423 &X41
-------------------	--	-------------------

Code I(a) alcohol intoxication as indexed and code the nature of injury and external cause code for barbiturate intoxication on I(b).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Poisoning**

**Part Q**

---

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Alcoholism	F102
9	II Alcohol and barbiturate intoxication	F100 T423 &X41
<u>MOD</u>		

A

Accident

Code alcoholism as indexed in Part I. Code Part II alcohol intoxication as indexed and the nature of injury and external cause code for barbiturate intoxication.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Barbiturate toxicity	T423 &X61
9	II Barbiturate and alcohol intoxication	T423 F100
<u>MOD</u>		

S

Suicide

Code I(a) nature of injury for barbiturate T423 and external cause code X61 for suicidal barbiturate toxicity. Code Part II, nature of injury for barbiturates and alcohol intoxication as indexed.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Poisoning

Part Q

5. Intoxication (acute) NOS due to specified substances

When intoxication (acute) NOS is reported “due to” drugs or poisonous substances, code the intoxication to the nature of injury code for the first substance reported in the “due to” position.

**Exception:**

Intoxication (acute) NOS “due to” drug(s) with indication the drug was being given for therapy.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Acute intoxication	T404				
	9		(b) Darvon & alcohol poisoning	T404	&X62	T519	X65	

MOD II

S

Suicide

Code I(a) T404, the nature of injury code for darvon since this is the first substance reported in the “due to” position. Code I(b) to the nature of injury and external cause code for darvon poisoning and alcohol poisoning. Precede the external cause code for darvon poisoning with an ampersand. Do not ampersand external cause code for alcohol poisoning.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Intoxication	T58				
	9		(b) Carbon monoxide inhalation	T58	&X47			

MOD II

A

Accident

Code I(a) T58, the nature of injury for the substance (carbon monoxide) reported in “due to” position. Code I(b) to the nature of injury and external cause code for carbon monoxide inhalation. Precede the external cause code with an ampersand.

**NOTE: See Appendix H for additional drug examples.**

**R. Complications of medical and surgical care (Y40-Y84)**

Code any complication, abnormal reaction, misadventure to patient, or other adverse effect that occurred as a result of or during medical care except obstetrical procedures to the appropriate category in Chapters I-XIX, but take into account the medical care if it modifies the code assignment. Assign the appropriate external cause (E-code) pertaining to the medical care regardless of whether the complication is classified to Chapters I-XVIII or to Chapter XIX.

The E-code distinguishes between:

1. Drugs, medicaments and biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59).
2. Misadventures to patients during surgical and medical care (Y60-Y69).
3. Surgical and other medical procedures as the cause of abnormal reaction of the patient, or of later complication, without mention of misadventure at the time of the procedure (Y83-Y84).

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

### Part R

---

#### Use of ampersand (More than one instruction may apply)

1. Always precede the condition that necessitated the medical or surgical care with an ampersand the first time it is reported. Generally, the first condition on the lowest used line will be the reason for medical care.

I	(a) Pneumonia	J958
	(b) Surgery	Y839
	(c) Pulmonary hemorrhage	R048
	(d) Lung cancer	&C349

2. Precede the external cause (Y40-Y84) with an ampersand **if the complication** is classified to Chapter XIX (T80-T88).

I	(a) Pulmonary embolism	T817
	(b) Surgery	&Y839

3. Precede the complication with an ampersand **if the complication** is classified to Chapter I-XVIII and the condition requiring medical or surgical care is **NOT** reported.

I	(a) Renal failure	&N19
	(b) Drug therapy	Y579

4. If the medical or surgical care was administered for an injury, precede the code for the external cause of the injury with an ampersand.

	I	(a) Pneumonia	J958
<u>Place</u>		(b) Surgery	Y839
9		(c) Fracture of hip	S720
		(d) Fall	&W19

5. If two or more conditions for which the medical or surgical care could be administered are reported and the reason for treatment cannot be determined, precede the first condition with an ampersand.

I	(a) Pneumonia	J958
	(b) Surgery	Y839
II	Lung cancer, gastric ulcer	&C349 K259

6. If the medical care was administered for diagnostic purposes, precede the code for the condition that was found or confirmed by the diagnostic finding with an ampersand the first time it is reported.

I	(a) Cerebral edema	G978
	(b) Cerebral arteriogram	Y848
	(c) Brain tumor	&D432

## Part R

1. Drugs, medicaments and biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59)

a. Complications of drugs

Although almost any condition reported due to drug therapy is regarded as a complication, there are a few diseases that are not considered complications. The drug therapy is not coded when there is no evidence of a complication.

(1) The following are not regarded as complications of drug therapy.

(a) These conditions due to drug therapy:

Infectious and parasitic diseases	A000-A309, A320-A329, A360-A399, A420-A449, A481-A488, A500-A690, A692-B199, B250-B349, B500-B942, B949 ( <b>EXCEPT:</b> Antineoplastic drugs Y431-Y433; Immunosuppressive agents Y434)  B200-B24
Neoplasms	C000-D489
Diabetes	E10-E14 ( <b>EXCEPT:</b> Steroids Y425, Y427)
Hemophilia	D66-D682
Alcoholic disorders	E244, E52, F100-F109, G312, G405, G621, G721, I426, K292, K700-K709, K860, L278, R780, R826, R893
Rheumatic fever or rheumatic heart disease	I00-I099
Arteriosclerosis and arteriosclerotic conditions	
Influenza	J100-J118

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

Hernia	K400-K469
Congenital malformations	Q000-Q999

This is not an all inclusive list.

- I (a) Lung cancer C349
- (b) Drug therapy

Since lung cancer is not considered a complication of drug therapy, no code is assigned for I(b).

- (b) Any condition stated as congenital, familial, hereditary, idiopathic or conditions with a duration that predates the drug therapy.

- I (a) Congenital cardiomyopathy I424
- (b) Drug therapy

Do not code the drug therapy since conditions stated as congenital cannot be considered as complications.

- I (a) Nephritis 6 months N059
  - (b) Drug therapy 2 months
- Reject 1

Do not code the drug therapy on I(b). The nephritis cannot be considered as a complication since it occurred prior to the drug therapy.

- (2) Code any condition classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII that could result from a drug, medicament, or biological substance (including anesthesia) known or presumed to have been properly administered in correct dosage to the appropriate category in these chapters. If the Classification provides a code for the condition reported as “due to drug” or “drug induced,” use this code. If no provision is made for the condition reported as “due to drug” or “drug induced,” code to the unspecified code for the condition. Classify only those complications that cannot be assigned to Chapters I-XVIII to Chapter XIX (T88.-). When a condition classifiable to Chapter I-XVIII is reported due to a drug reaction (named drug) NOS, e.g., insulin reaction, code the condition as indexed and code the drug reaction to the E-code.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

- 
- |                                      |            |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Respiratory and cardiac arrest | &R092 I469 |
| (b) Local anesthesia reaction        | Y483       |

Code the conditions reported on I(a) as complications of local anesthesia since the local anesthesia is presumed to have been properly administered. Precede the complication (R092) with an ampersand. Since a complication is reported, assign only an external cause on I(b) indicating Adverse effect in therapeutic use.

- |                     |            |
|---------------------|------------|
| I (a) Drug reaction | T887 &Y400 |
| (b) Penicillin      |            |

No specified complication is reported; therefore, code the reaction to a drug on I(a) to both a nature of injury and external cause code. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Do not enter a code for penicillin on I(b) since it was entered on I(a).

- |                         |       |
|-------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Encephalitis      | &G040 |
| (b) Measles vaccination | Y590  |

Code the encephalitis as a complication of the measles vaccine since the measles vaccine is presumed to have been properly administered. Encephalitis is indexed following vaccination or other immunization procedure. Precede the complication (G040) with an ampersand. Code the measles vaccination to Y590, Adverse effect in therapeutic use.

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| I (a) Pulmonary embolism                        | I269       |
| (b) Estrogen to control excessive<br>(c) menses | Y425 &N920 |

Code the pulmonary embolism as a complication of the estrogen since the estrogen is presumed to have been properly administered. Code the estrogen as Adverse effect in therapeutic use and excessive menses as indexed. Precede the code for excessive menses with an ampersand to indicate the condition requiring treatment.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

(3) Unless there are indications to the contrary, assume the drug, medicament, or biological substance was used for medical care purposes and was properly administered in correct dosage. Do not make this assumption if:

- The drug was one which is not used for medical care purposes, e.g., LSD or heroin, or It was an analgesic, sedative, narcotic or psychotropic drug (or combination thereof) or drug NOS AND the certifier indicated the death was due to an "accident" or it occurred under "undetermined circumstances," or One or more of these drugs was taken in conjunction with alcohol

Code to poisoning (refer to Section V, Part Q, 2, Poisoning by drugs).

Table with columns for Place (I, 9), description (a) Respiratory failure, (b) Ingestion of mixed sedatives, and codes (J969, T426 &X41). Includes a MOD A box labeled Accident.

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) nature of injury and external cause code for accidental poisoning by mixed sedatives. Code as poisoning since the drug is a sedative and the certifier indicated the death was due to an accident. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

Table with columns for Place (I, 9), description (a) Cerebral anoxia, (b) Ingestion of barbiturates, II Alcoholic intoxication, and codes (G931, T423 &X41, F100).

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b), accidental ingestion of barbiturates since the drug is a sedative and it was taken in conjunction with alcohol. (Alcohol consumption is implied by the statement of alcoholic intoxication). Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Code Part II as indexed.

- (4) When the condition for which the drug is usually administered is reported elsewhere on the certificate, code this condition as indexed, preceded by an ampersand to identify the condition requiring treatment.

I (a) Hemorrhage	K922
(b) Ulcer of stomach	K259
(c) Cortisone therapy	Y420
II Scleroderma	&M349

The ulcer of the stomach is the complication of the cortisone therapy. Code the E-code for cortisone on I(c). Since cortisone is used in treatment of scleroderma, precede this condition with an ampersand.

When a complication occurs as the result of a drug being given in treatment and the condition requiring the drug is not reported anywhere on the certificate, **do not assume** a disease condition.

When a complication classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII occurs as the result of a drug being administered in therapeutic use and the condition requiring the treatment is not reported, place an ampersand preceding the code for the complication.

I (a) Renal failure	&N19
(b) Ingested antidiabetic drug	Y423

The renal failure on I(a) is the complication of the antidiabetic drug. Code the E-code for antidiabetic drug on I(b). **Do not** assume a disease condition requiring therapy even though antidiabetic drug is one used in the treatment of diabetes. Precede the complication with an ampersand.

- (5) “Drug induced” complications

When a condition is stated to be “drug induced,” consider the condition to be a complication of drug therapy, unless otherwise indicated. Code as follows:

- (a) If the complication is classified to Chapter I-XVIII, code the E-code for the drug, followed by the code for the complication.

I (a) Drug induced aplastic anemia	Y579 D611
II Carcinoma of lung	&C349

Code I(a) Y579, complication of an unspecified drug, and the “drug induced aplastic anemia” as indexed. Ampersand the carcinoma of lung as the condition requiring treatment.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

I (a) Drug induced polyneuropathy Y579 &G620

Code I(a) Y579, complication of an unspecified drug, and the “drug induced polyneuropathy” as indexed. Place an ampersand preceding the code for the complication.

- (b) If the complication is classified to Chapter XIX, code the nature of injury code for the complication followed by the E-code for the drug. Place an ampersand preceding the E-code.

I (a) Chloramphenicol induced reaction T887 &Y402  
(b) Septicemia &A419

Code I(a) as a complication of the drug (named). Code the nature of injury for the complication followed by the E-code for the named drug. Place an ampersand preceding the E-code and the septicemia to indicate the condition requiring treatment.

- (6) “Intoxication by drug” due to drug therapy

When “intoxication by drug” is reported or indicated to be treatment for a condition or due to drug therapy, consider these to be complications of drug therapy, not poisoning.

I (a) Cardiac arrest I469  
(b) Digitalis intoxication T887 &Y520  
(c) ASHD &I251

Code the digitalis intoxication as drug therapy since it is indicated as treatment for a condition by its position on the record. Code the intoxication as indexed under Intoxication, drug, correct substance properly administered and the E-code for digitalis.

(7) Combined effects of two or more drugs

When a complication is reported due to the combined effects of two or more drugs, code the complication as indexed. On the next lower line, code the appropriate E-code (Y400-Y599).

Do not consider as complication of drug therapy if the combination of drugs was any two or more of the following:

Analgesics  
Sedative  
Narcotic  
Psychotropic drug  
Drug NOS

**and** the certifier indicated the death was due to an “accident” or it occurred under “undetermined circumstances.” Code to poisoning (refer to Section V, Part Q, 2, Poisoning by drugs).

To determine the appropriate E-code, refer to the column for “Adverse effect in therapeutic use” in the Table of Drugs and Chemicals and proceed as follows:

- (a) When the drugs are classified to different fourth characters of the same three-character category, code the appropriate E-code with the fourth character for “other.”

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Valium and sleeping pills	Y478
(c) Anxiety	&F419

Code I(b) to the appropriate E-code for the combined effects of two drugs in therapeutic use classified to the same three-character category.

- (b) When the drugs are classified to different three-character categories, code the E-code to Y578, “Other drugs and medicaments.”

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Cor pulmonale	&I279
II Hemorrhage from anticoagulant and aspirin	R5800 Y578

Code Y578, the appropriate E-code for combined effect of two drugs in therapeutic use classified to different three-character categories.

(8) Complication of chemotherapy

- (a) When a complication of chemotherapy is reported, code the complication as indexed and Y579 unless a malignancy is reported on the certificate. When the complication of chemotherapy is classifiable to Chapter I-XVIII and the condition for which the chemotherapy was given is not reported, place an ampersand preceding the code for the complication.

I (a) Aplastic anemia	&D611
(b) Chemotherapy	Y579

Code I(a), aplastic anemia due to drugs (D611) and code I(b) Y579, adverse effect of unspecified drug in correct usage. Precede the complication with an ampersand.

- (b) When a malignancy is reported and a complication of chemotherapy is reported, consider the chemotherapy to be antineoplastic drugs and code the E-code to Y433.

I (a) Purpura	D692
(b) Chemotherapy	Y433
(c) Leukemia	&C959

Code I(a) as indexed. Consider the chemotherapy on line (b) as antineoplastic drugs and code Y433. Ampersand the leukemia as the condition requiring treatment.

(9) Complications of immunosuppression

Immunosuppression can be drug therapy or a complication of drug therapy. Code immunosuppression as **drug therapy** unless reported **due to** a drug, then code as a complication of the drug (D849). If the drug is not reported elsewhere on the record, code Y434 for the immunosuppressive drug.

I (a) Pneumonia and sepsis	J189 A419
(b) Immunosuppression	D849
(c) Chemotherapy for carcinoma of brain	Y433
(d)	&C719

Since the immunosuppression is due to chemotherapy, consider as a complication. Ampersand the carcinoma of brain as the condition requiring treatment.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

- |                                  |       |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Immunosuppression          | D849  |
| (b) Vancomycin                   | Y408  |
| (c) Acute bacterial endocarditis | &I330 |

Since the immunosuppression is due to a drug, consider as a complication. Ampersand the acute bacterial endocarditis as the condition requiring treatment.

- |                           |      |
|---------------------------|------|
| I (a) Infection           | B99  |
| (b) Immunosuppression for | Y434 |
| (c) Carcinoma of prostate | &C61 |

Consider the infection as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(b). Ampersand the carcinoma of prostate as the condition requiring treatment.

- |                                |       |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Cardiorespiratory arrest | I469  |
| (b) Sepsis                     | A419  |
| (c) Immunosuppression for      | Y434  |
| (d) Rheumatoid vasculitis      | &M052 |

Consider the sepsis as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(c). Ampersand the rheumatoid vasculitis as the condition requiring treatment.

- |                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Sepsis          | A419  |
| (b) Immunosuppression | Y427  |
| (c) Renal transplant  | &N289 |
| II Steroid therapy    |       |

Consider the sepsis as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(b). Code external cause code to steroids, the immunosuppressive drug reported elsewhere on the record. Code and ampersand Disease, kidney, as the condition for which the renal transplant was performed and the condition requiring the immunosuppressive drug.

- |                          |       |
|--------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Respiratory arrest | R092  |
| (b) Septicemia           | A419  |
| (c) Immunosuppression    | Y434  |
| II Renal transplant      | &N289 |

Consider the septicemia as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(c). In Part II, code and ampersand Disease, kidney, as the condition for which the renal transplant was performed and the condition requiring the immunosuppressive drug.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

- 
- |    |                                     |       |
|----|-------------------------------------|-------|
| I  | (a) Bacteremia                      | A499  |
|    | (b) Immunosuppression               | Y434  |
|    | (c)                                 |       |
| II | Idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura | &D693 |

Consider the bacteremia as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(b). Ampersand the idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura as the condition requiring treatment.

- |    |                             |           |
|----|-----------------------------|-----------|
| I  | (a) Cardiac arrest          | I469      |
|    | (b) ASHD                    | I251      |
|    | (c)                         |           |
| II | D.M., AS, immunosuppression | E149 I709 |

Do not enter a code for the immunosuppression since there is not a reported complication.

(10) Drugs administered for one year or more

When a complication is reported due to a drug being administered for one year or more, consider the drug was given on a continuing basis. Code as a current complication; **do not** code as sequela.

- |   |                            |       |
|---|----------------------------|-------|
| I | (a) Hypercorticoesteronism | E242  |
|   | (b) Steroids - 6 years     | Y427  |
|   | (c) Arthritis              | &M139 |

Consider the steroids as being administered on a continuing basis for six years. Code as a current complication of the drug. Code I(a) Hypercorticoesteronism, correct substance properly administered (E242).

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**2. Surgical procedures as the cause of abnormal reaction of the patient or later complication (Y83)a. Complications of surgical procedures

Although almost any condition reported due to surgery is regarded as a postoperative complication, there are a few diseases that are not considered postoperative complications. The surgical procedure is not coded when there is no evidence of a surgical complication.

(1) The following are not regarded as complications of surgical procedures:

(a) These conditions reported due to surgery:

Infectious and parasitic diseases	A000-A309, A320-A329, A360-A399, A420-A449, A481-A488, A500-A690, A692-B349, B500-B978
Neoplasms	C000-D489
Hemophilia	D66, D67, D680, D681, D682
Diabetes	E10-E14
Alcoholic disorders	E52, E244, F100-F109, G312, G405, G621, G721, K860, I426, K292, K700-K709, L278, R780, R826, R893
Rheumatic fever or rheumatic heart disease	I00-I099
Hypertensive diseases	I11-I139
Coronary artery disease Coronary disease	I251
Ischemic cardiomyopathy	I255
Chronic or degenerative myocarditis	I514

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

Arteriosclerosis and arteriosclerotic conditions <u>except</u> those classified to I219	
Calculus or stones of any type or site	
Influenza	J100-J118
Hernia except ventral (incisional)	K400-K429 K440-K469
Diverticulitis	K570-K579
Cholelithiasis	K800-K808
Collagen diseases	M300-M359
Congenital malformations	Q000-Q999

This is not an all inclusive list.

- I (a) Myocardial infarction I219
- (b) Arteriosclerosis I709
- (c) Surgery

Since arteriosclerosis is not accepted as a complication of surgery, do not code the surgery.

- I (a) Diabetic gangrene E145
- (b) Leg amputation

Do not code the leg amputation (surgery) since there is no indication of a surgical complication.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

(b) Do not accept conditions with a duration which predates the surgery

I (a) MI	2 weeks	I219
(b) Surgery	2 days	
		Reject 1

Do not code the surgery on I(b). Since the MI occurred before the surgery was performed it cannot be a complication.

(2) When a condition is reported due to a **named** surgical (operative) procedure can be considered as a complication or adverse effect, code as follows:

**STEP 1:** Determine if the complication is in the Index qualified by the named surgery reported

I (a) Lymphedema	I972
(b) Postmastectomy	Y836
(c) Breast cancer	&C509

Code I(a) using Step 1:

Lymphedema  
- postmastectomy I97.2

I (a) Hemorrhage	T828
(b) Coronary artery bypass graft	&Y832
(c) Coronary heart disease	&I259

Code I(a) using Step 1:

Hemorrhage  
- due to or associated with  
- - device, implant or graft  
- - - heart NEC T82.8

“Coronary” is not indexed, but is located in the heart; therefore, heart can be used in place of coronary.

**NOTE:** Before continuing to **STEP 2** (below), it is important to determine the nature of the named surgery.

I (a) Hemorrhage	T828
(b) Cardiac revascularization	&Y832
(c) Cardiovascular disease	&I516

Revascularization is defined as the re-establishment of adequate blood supply to a part, by means of a vascular graft.  
Code I(a) as indexed:

Hemorrhage  
- due to or associated with  
- - device, implant or graft  
- - - heart NEC T82.8

**STEP 2:** If the Index does not qualify the complication with the named surgery, determine if the complication is indexed under Complications (from) (of), surgical procedure.

I (a) Hemorrhage	T810
(b) Postlaminectomy	&Y836
(c) Intervertebral disc degeneration	&M513

The Index does not qualify hemorrhage as postlaminectomy.  
Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - hemorrhage or hematoma (any site) T81.0

Code I(b), as indexed under Complication, laminectomy.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

---

I	(a) Intestinal obstruction	K913
	(b) Colostomy	Y833
	(c) Ulcerative colitis	&K519

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - intestinal obstruction K91.3

Code I(b), surgery, as indexed under Complications, colostomy. Code I(c), ulcerative colitis, as indexed and precede with an ampersand indicating the reason for the surgery.

**STEP 3:** If the Index does not qualify the complication with the named surgery nor is the complication indexed under Complications (from) (of), surgical procedures, determine if the named surgery is indexed under Complications (from) (of).

I	(a) Stroke	T828
	(b) Coronary artery bypass	&Y832
	(c) Arteriosclerotic heart disease	&I251

The Index does not qualify stroke with coronary artery bypass nor is stroke indexed under Complications, surgical procedures; therefore, code I(a) using **Step 3:**

Complications (from) (of)  
- coronary artery (bypass) graft  
- - specified NEC T82.8

Stroke is neither an infection nor an inflammation nor mechanical; therefore, select “specified NEC.”

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

---

**Part R**

I (a) MI	T828
(b) Postfemoral bypass graft	&Y832
(c) Peripheral vascular disease	&I739

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)

- graft

- - femoral artery (bypass) - See Complications, graft, arterial

Complications (from) (of)

- graft

- - arterial

- - - specified NEC T82.8

Code I(b), Y832, as indexed under Complication, graft.  
Precede the E-code (Y832) by an ampersand.

I (a) Cerebral embolism	T858
(b) Bypass	&Y832

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)

- bypass (see also Complications, graft)

Complications (from) (of)

- graft

- - specified NEC T85.8

Code I(b), Y832, as indexed under Complications, bypass.  
Precede the E-code (Y832) by an ampersand.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

---

**Part R**

I (a) Anemia	T858
(b) Gastrointestinal bypass	&Y832
(c) Diverticulitis	&K579

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)  
- bypass (see also Complications, graft)

Complications (from) (of)  
- graft  
- - intestinal tract  
- - - specified NEC T85.8

Code I(b), Y832, as indexed under Complications, bypass.  
Precede the E-code (Y832) by an ampersand. Code I(c),  
Diverticulitis, K579, as indexed. Precede the code (K579) by  
an ampersand to indicate the reason for surgery.

(3) When a condition that is

- (a) reported due to a **named** surgery cannot be assigned a code using **STEP 1- STEP 3** or
- (b) reported due to a surgery (operation) (of a site) NOS, and can be considered as a complication or adverse effect, code as follows:

**STEP 4:** Determine if the complication is in the Index, qualified:

- (a) as reported
- (b) with any term meaning “due to” **surgery** (see Section II, Part C, 2, a, “Due to” written in or implied)
- (c) as surgical or as complicating surgery
- (d) as postoperative or postsurgical
- (e) as postprocedural
- (f) during or resulting from a procedure, **so stated**
- (g) resulting from a procedure, **so stated**

I	(a) Pulmonary insufficiency following	&J952
	(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) as reported using **Step 4 (a)**:

Insufficiency  
- pulmonary  
- - following  
- - - surgery J952

Precede the code J952 by an ampersand.

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

I (a)	Hypothyroidism	E890
(b)	Thyroid surgery	Y839
(c)	Thyroid cancer	&C73

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (b)**. Refer to “due to” list in Section II, Part C, 2, a, “Due to” written in or implied.

Hypothyroidism  
- due to  
- - surgery E890

Thyroid surgery is equivalent to surgery NOS.

I (a)	Cardiac insufficiency	T818
(b)	Surgery	&Y839

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (c)**:

Insufficiency  
- cardiac  
- - complicating surgery T818

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC. Precede the E-code (Y839) by an ampersand.

I (a)	Pneumonia	&J958
(b)	Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (d)**. Indexed as Pneumonia (see also Pneumonitis).

Pneumonitis  
- postoperative J958

Precede the code J958 by an ampersand.

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

---

I (a) Renal failure	&N990
(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) using Step 4 (e):

Failure  
- renal  
- - postprocedural N99.0

Precede the code N990 by an ampersand.  
Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication,  
surgical operation NEC.

I (a) Cerebral anoxia	&G978
(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) using Step 4 (f):

Anoxia  
- cerebral  
- - during or resulting from a procedure G97.8

Precede the code G978 by an ampersand.  
Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication,  
surgical operation NEC.

I (a) Anoxic brain damage	&G978
(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) using Step 4 (g):

Damage  
- brain  
- - anoxic  
- - - resulting from a procedure G97.8

Precede the code G978 by an ampersand.  
Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication,  
surgical procedure NEC.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

**STEP 5:** If the Index does not provide for the complication qualified with any of the terms defined in the previous steps, determine if the complication is indexed under Complications (from)(of), surgical procedure.

**NOTE:** If a “named” surgery is reported, this step has already been completed in **Step 2**.

I (a) Hyperglycemia	&E891
(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - hyperglycemia E89.1

Precede the code E891 by an ampersand.

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC.

**STEP 6:** If the Index does not provide for the complication as above, determine if:

- (a) the site of the complication is in the Index under Complications (from) (of), surgical procedure  
**or**
- (b) the system in which the complication occurred (based upon the code assigned in the Index) is in the Index under Complications (from)(of), surgical procedure.

I	(a) MI	T818
	(b) Surgery	&Y839

Code I(a) using **Step 6 (a)**:

Complications (from)(of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - cardiac T81.8

The site of a myocardial infarction is the muscle tissue of the heart which is synonymous with cardiac. Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

I	(a) Uremia	&N998
	(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) using **Step 6 (b)**:

Complications (from) (of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - genitourinary  
- - - specified NEC N99.8

Uremia NOS is indexed to N19 which indicates this condition is a specified disease in the genitourinary system.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

---

I (a) Mesenteric embolism	K918
(b) Gallbladder surgery	Y839
(c) Gallstones	&K802

Code I(a) using Step 6 (b):

Complications (from)(of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - digestive system  
- - - specified NEC K91.8

Mesenteric embolism is indexed to K550 which indicates that this condition is a specified disease in the digestive system.

**STEP 7:** When a reported complication cannot be classified to a system which is indexed, code to T818, other complications of procedures, not elsewhere classified.

I (a) Anemia	T818
(b) Surgery	&Y839

Anemia is not indexed as due to surgery or as postoperative. Anemia is a disease of the blood-forming organs and neither the term nor the body system is indexed under Complication (from) (of), surgical procedure.

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from)(of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - specified NEC T81.8

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

b. Condition necessitating surgery

- (1) When a complication of surgery is reported and the underlying condition which necessitated the surgery is stated or implied, place an ampersand (&) preceding this condition to indicate the reason for surgery.

I (a) Pulmonary embolism	T817
(b) Surgery for	&Y839
(c) Gangrene of foot	&R02

Code the pulmonary embolism as the complication, Y839 for the surgery, and precede the code for gangrene with an ampersand to identify the reason for surgery. Precede the surgery code with an ampersand since the complication is coded to Chapter XIX.

- (2) When the condition necessitating the surgery is not stated or implied and the complication is classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII, place an ampersand preceding the code for the complication.

I (a) Renal failure	&N990
(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a), renal failure, N990, as the complication of the surgery (Y839) on I(b). Precede the N990 with an ampersand since it is classified to Chapter I-XVIII and the reason for the surgery is not reported.

- (3) **Do not** ampersand a condition necessitating surgery unless a complication of the surgical procedure is coded.

I (a) ASHD	I251
II SP mastectomy, Cancer of breast	C509

Do not precede the reason for surgery, C509 with an ampersand since no complication of the mastectomy is reported.

- (4) When the condition that necessitated the surgery is not reported, but the organ or site is implied by the operative term, code disease of the organ or site.

**Exception:****Appendectomy**

Code appendicitis (K37) when appendectomy is the only operative procedure reported. If appendectomy is reported with other abdominal or pelvic surgery, assume the appendectomy to be incidental to the other surgery and **do not** code K37.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

Use the following codes when these surgical procedures are reported and the condition necessitating the surgery is not reported:

Aorta (with any other vessel NEC) bypass or graft .....	I779
Aorta coronary bypass or graft .....	I251
Atrio-ventricular shunt.....	G919
Billroth (I or II).....	K3190
Brock valvulotomy.....	Q223
Cardiac revascularization.....	I251
Carotid endarterectomy.....	I679
Choledochoduodenostomy.....	K829
Cholecystectomy.....	K829
Cholelithotomy .....	K802
Colostomy .....	K639
Coronary artery bypass graft (CABG).....	I251
Coronary endarterectomy.....	I251
Coronary revascularization.....	I251
Endarterectomy (artery) (aorta) .....	I779
Femoral bypass .....	I779
Femoral-popliteal bypass .....	I779
Gastrectomy .....	K3190
Gastroenterostomy .....	K929
Gastro-intestinal surgery NOS.....	K929
Gastrojejunostomy .....	K929
Gastrojejunectomy .....	K929
Herniorrhaphy .....	code hernia
Hip fixation.....	S720
Hip pinning .....	S720
Hip prosthesis.....	M259
Hip replacement.....	M259
Hysterectomy .....	N859
Ileal conduit .....	N399
Ileal loop .....	N399
Iliofemoral bypass.....	I779
Lobectomy-when indicating lung.....	J9840
Mammary artery(internal) implant .....	I251
Nephrectomy.....	N289
Revascularization of heart.....	I251
Revascularization, myocardial.....	I251
T and A .....	J359
Thoracoplasty.....	J989
Tonsillectomy .....	J359

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

Ureterosigmoid bypass.....	N399
Ureterosigmoidostomy.....	N399
Vein stripping.....	I839
Ventricular peritoneal shunt.....	G919
Vineberg operation.....	I251

When the condition that necessitated the surgery is not reported, do not assume a disease condition for surgical procedures such as the following:

amputation	portocaval shunt
chordotomy	rhizotomy
craniotomy	sympathectomy
cystostomy	tracheotomy
D & C	tracheostomy
gastrostomy	tubal ligation
laminectomy	vagotomy
laparotomy	vasectomy
lobectomy NOS	vas ligation
lobotomy	

If one of these types of procedures is the only entry on the certificate, code R99.

When the following complications of surgery are reported and the reason for the surgery is not reported, use the following codes as the reason the surgery was performed:

	Reason for Surgery <u>Code</u>
Postsurgical hypothyroidism	E079
Postsurgical hypoinsulinemia	K869
Postsurgical blind loop syndrome	K639
Other and unspecified postsurgical malabsorption	K639
I (a) Postsurgical blind loop syndrome	Y839 K912 &K639

When a complication is reported due to:

“Surgery” with the underlying condition that necessitated the surgery stated, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required, and the underlying condition necessitating the surgery preceded by an ampersand.

I (a) Hemorrhage	T810
(b) Surgery	&Y839
(c) Ca. of lung	&C349

Code I(a) as postoperative hemorrhage (T810). Code the external cause code for the surgical procedure and precede by an ampersand. Code C349, cancer of lung and precede by an ampersand to identify the stated underlying condition for which surgery was performed.

I (a) Pulmonary hemorrhage	R048
(b) Lung cancer	&C349
II Pneumonia due to surgery for pulmonary hemorrhage	J958 Y839 R048

Code line I(a) and (b) as indexed. Precede cancer of lung with an ampersand to indicate the underlying reason for which surgery was performed. Since the first entry in Part II, pneumonia, is reported due to surgery, code as a complication of surgery.

“Surgery” with the condition which necessitated the surgery not stated and only one condition for which surgery could have been performed is reported, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required. Since only one condition for which the surgery could have been performed is reported, code the condition and precede with an ampersand to identify the reason for the surgery.

I (a) Mesenteric thrombosis	K918
(b) Surgery	Y839
II ASHD	&I251

Code mesenteric thrombosis as the complication of the surgery and code Y839 for the surgery. Since ASHD is the only condition on the certificate for which surgery could have been performed, precede the code for this condition by an ampersand.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

“Surgery” with the condition which necessitated the surgery not stated and two or more conditions for which surgery could have been performed are reported, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX and the surgery to appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required. Ampersand the first mentioned condition for which the surgery could have been performed.

- I (a) Wound dehiscence T813
- (b) Surgery &Y839
- II Cancer of lung, gastric ulcer &C349 K259

Code I(a), wound dehiscence, T813, as the complication of the surgery and code I(b), surgery, Y839. Code Part II as indexed and precede the code for cancer of lung by an ampersand since it is the first mentioned condition for which the surgery could have been performed.

“Surgery” without indication of the condition which necessitated the surgery, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, and the surgery to appropriate external cause code (Y83-) only. If the complication is classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII, precede the code for the complication with an ampersand.

- I (a) Shock & hemorrhage T811 T810
- (b) Surgery &Y839

Code I(a), shock and hemorrhage, T811 T810, both as complications of the surgery. Code I(b), surgery, Y839 and precede the code by an ampersand.

Surgical procedure such as **aneurysmectomy**, **cholelithotomy**, **hemorrhoidectomy** or **herniorrhaphy** which indicates the condition for which the surgery was performed, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required, and code the condition implied by the surgery following the external cause code for the surgery. Place an ampersand preceding the code for the condition.

- I (a) CHF I978
- (b) Cholelithotomy Y838 &K802

Code I(a), CHF (congestive heart failure), as the complication of surgery. Code I(b), cholelithotomy, Y838 K802. Cholelithotomy indicates cholelithiasis (K802) was the condition for which surgery was performed. Precede K802 by an ampersand.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

### Part R

Surgical procedure that indicates an organ or site with one related condition for which the surgery could have been performed, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required. Code the condition for which surgery could have been performed and precede with an ampersand.

I (a) MI	T818
(b) Gastrectomy	&Y836
II Bleeding gastric ulcer	&K254

Code I(a), MI, as the complication of the surgery. Code I(b), gastrectomy, Y836, as indexed and precede with an ampersand. Code Part II, bleeding gastric ulcer, as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate it was the condition for which surgery was performed.

Surgical procedure that indicates an organ or site without a related condition for which the surgery could have been performed, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required, and code disease of the organ or site following the external cause code for the surgery. Place an ampersand preceding the code for the condition.

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Pneumonia	J958
(c) Pancreatectomy	Y836 &K869

Code I(a), cardiac arrest, as indexed. Code I(b), pneumonia, as the complication of the surgery. Code I(c), pancreatectomy, as indexed, and since the surgery indicates a disease of the pancreas, code this as the reason for surgery. Precede K869 by an ampersand.

Prophylactic or nontherapeutic surgery, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, and the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required. Do not assume or ampersand a disease condition. When the complication is classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII, precede the code for the complication with an ampersand.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

### Part R

---

I	(a) Sepsis	A419
	(b) Infection	T814
	(c) Liposuction	&Y838
II		

Code I(a), sepsis, as indexed. Code I(b), infection, as the complication of the nontherapeutic surgery. Code I(c) as a specified type of surgical operation.

#### c. Conditions qualified as postoperative

When “postoperative,” “postop,” “p.o.,” “post-named surgery,” or a synonymous term qualifies a condition, determination must be made as to whether the condition is a surgical complication or the condition for which the surgery was performed.

The following conditions are common complications of surgery. Code these conditions as postoperative complications when preceded by or followed by one of the postoperative terms except when it is stated elsewhere on the certificate as the reason the surgery was performed.

abscess	occlusion
adhesions	peritonitis
aspiration	phlebitis, phlebothrombosis
atelectasis	pneumonia
bowel obstruction	pneumothorax
cardiac arrest	renal failure (acute)
embolism	sepsis
fistula	septicemia
gas gangrene	septic shock
hemolysis, hemolytic	shock
infection	thrombophlebitis
hemorrhage, hematoma	thrombosis
infarction	wound infection
infection	

This list is not all inclusive.

When “postoperative,” “postop,” etc., qualifies (preceding or following) a complication:

- (1) If the complication is classified to Chapters I-XVIII, code the external cause code followed by the code for the complication.

I (a) Pneumonia postgastrectomy                      Y836    J958    &K3190

Code pneumonia as the complication of surgery when reported as “postoperative” or a synonymous term. Since the reason for surgery is not stated, code disease stomach and precede by an ampersand to indicate the reason for surgery.

I (a) Postgastrectomy dumping syndrome    Y836    K911  
       (b)  
       (c) Carcinoma of stomach                      &C169

Code I(a), Y836, as indexed under Complication, removal of organ, and K911, as indexed under Syndrome, dumping. Code I(c) C169, as indexed under Neoplasm, stomach, malignant. Place an ampersand (&) preceding C169 to identify the underlying reason for surgery.

I (a) Pulmonary edema                                      J958  
       (b) P.O. bowel obstruction                      Y839    K566  
       (c) Ca. of cecum                                      &C180  
 II Surgery for bowel obstruction                      K566

Code I(a), pulmonary edema, as the complication of surgery. Code I(b) to surgery Y839 and code bowel obstruction as indexed K566 since it is stated as the reason for surgery. Code I(c), cancer of cecum, as indexed and precede the code by an ampersand to indicate the underlying reason for surgery. Part II, do not enter a code for surgery since P.O. was reported on line (b) and a surgery code was entered there. Code bowel obstruction as indexed.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

- (2) If the complication is classified to Chapter XIX, code the nature of injury code followed by the external cause code.

I (a) Sepsis and anuria	A419	R34
(b) P.O. peritonitis	T814	&Y839
(c) P.O. ca. of colon c̄ obstruction	&C189	K566

Code peritonitis as the complication as indexed under Peritonitis, postprocedural, T814. Code Y839 for the procedure. Peritonitis is considered to be a complication of surgery when reported as “postop” and not reported as the reason for surgery. Place an ampersand preceding the surgery code and the cancer of colon to identify the underlying reason for surgery.

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Peritonitis, postop	T814 &Y839
(c) Cholelithiasis	&K802

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b), peritonitis, as the complication, T814 and Y839 for the procedure. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Code I(c), cholelithiasis, as indexed and precede the code by an ampersand to indicate the condition necessitating surgery.

I (a) MI postgastrectomy	T818 &Y836
II Gastric ulcer surgery	&K259

Code I(a), M.I. postgastrectomy, T818 Y836. M.I. is considered to be a complication of surgery when reported as “postoperative” and not reported as the reason for surgery. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Code Part II, gastric ulcer, K259 as indexed and precede the code by an ampersand to indicate the condition necessitating surgery. Do not enter a code in Part II for surgery since gastrectomy was reported on I(a) and the code was entered there.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

---

### Part R

- |                              |            |
|------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Postoperative embolism | T817 &Y836 |
| (b) Appendectomy             |            |
| (c) Acute appendicitis       | &K359      |

Code I(a), postoperative embolism, as indexed to T817 and Y836 as indexed under Complication, removal of organ. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Code I(c), acute appendicitis, as indexed and precede the code by an ampersand to identify the underlying condition that necessitated surgery.

- |                                    |            |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Heart failure                | I509       |
| (b) ASHD                           | &I251      |
| II Thrombophlebitis, postoperative | T817 &Y839 |

Code I(a) and I(b) as indexed. Code Part II, thrombophlebitis, postoperative, T817 Y839. Precede the E-code (Y839) by an ampersand. Thrombophlebitis is considered to be a complication of surgery when reported as “postoperative” and not reported as the condition that necessitated surgery. Precede the code on I(b), I251 (ASHD), by an ampersand to indicate the underlying condition necessitating surgery.

- |                            |            |
|----------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Pneumonia            | J189       |
| (b) P.O. infection (wound) | T814 &Y839 |
| (c) Intestinal obstruction | &K566      |

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b), p.o. infection (wound), T814 Y839. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Infection is considered to be a complication of surgery when reported as “postop” and not reported as the reason for surgery. Code I(c), intestinal obstruction, K566 and precede the code by an ampersand to indicate the condition necessitating surgery.

(3) When “postoperative intestinal obstruction” (any K560-K567) is reported and no condition which could have necessitated the procedure is reported:

(a) Code the postoperative intestinal obstruction as the condition which necessitated the surgical procedure if another condition is reported due to the postoperative obstruction.

I	(a)	Peritonitis	T814
	(b)	Postoperative bowel	&Y839 &K566
	(c)	obstruction	

Code I(a), peritonitis, as the complication of surgery. Code I(b), postoperative bowel obstruction Y839 K566. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Precede the K566 with an ampersand to indicate the condition necessitating surgery.

(b) Code the postoperative intestinal obstruction to K913 as the complication if no other condition is reported due to postoperative obstruction.

I	(a)	Postoperative ileus	Y839 &K913
---	-----	---------------------	------------

Code I(a) Y839 K913. Precede K913 by an ampersand. Consider the postoperative ileus to be the complication since no other condition is reported due to this condition.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

d. Complication as first entry on lowest used line in Part I

- (1) When any one of the conditions listed below is reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I with surgery reported on same line or in Part II, code this condition as a complication of surgery.

**Do not** apply this instruction:

- (a) When the surgery is stated to have been performed 28 days or more prior to death.
- (b) When the surgery is stated to have been performed for the condition reported as the first entry on the lowest line.
- (c) When the condition on the lowest used line predates the surgery.

Acute renal failure
Aspiration
Atelectasis
Bacteremia
Cardiac arrest (any I469)
Disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC)
Embolism (any site)
Gas gangrene
Hemolysis, hemolytic infection
Hemorrhage NOS
Infarction (any site)
Infection NOS
Occlusion (any site)
Phlebitis (any site)
Phlebothrombosis (any site)
Pneumonia (J120-J168, J180-J189, J690, J698)
Pneumothorax
Pulmonary insufficiency
Renal failure (acute) NOS
Septicemia (any A400-A419)
Shock (R570-R579)
Thrombophlebitis (any site)
Thrombosis (any site)

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

- 
- |    |                               |       |      |
|----|-------------------------------|-------|------|
| I  | (a) Pneumonia                 | J958  |      |
|    | (b)                           |       |      |
|    | (c)                           |       |      |
| II | Diabetic gangrene, amputation | &E145 | Y835 |

Code pneumonia as a complication of the amputation since it is the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and surgery, not indicated to have been performed 28 days or more prior to death, is reported in Part II.

- |    |                                     |       |       |
|----|-------------------------------------|-------|-------|
| I  | (a) Pneumonia                       | J189  |       |
|    | (b) Pulmonary embolism, gastrectomy | T817  | &Y836 |
|    | (c)                                 |       |       |
| II | Cancer of stomach                   | &C169 |       |

Code pulmonary embolism as a complication of gastrectomy since it is the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and gastrectomy, not stated to have been performed 28 days or more prior to death, is reported on the same line as the embolism.

Date of death 09/17/96

- |    |                                    |       |      |
|----|------------------------------------|-------|------|
| I  | (a) Pleural effusion               | J90   |      |
|    | (b) Pulmonary embolism & pneumonia | T817  | J189 |
|    | (c)                                |       |      |
| II |                                    | &Y839 |      |

Operation block  
/9/15/96/

**NOTE:** When a date is entered in the operation block, code as if surgery was performed on that date.

Code I(a) as indexed. Code pulmonary embolism as the complication of surgery since this condition is the first condition on the lowest used line in Part I and surgery was performed less than 28 days prior to death.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

- I (a) Pulmonary infarction I269
- (b)
- (c)
- II Cardiac catheterization

Cardiac catheterization is not classified as a surgical procedure; therefore, do not code the pulmonary infarction as a complication.

- (2) When any of the conditions listed below are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and abdominal or pelvic surgery is reported on the same line or in Part II, code complication as indexed and the surgery to appropriate external cause code (Y83-) where it is indicated on the record by the certifier.

Peritonitis  
Intestinal obstruction (K560-K567)

- I (a) Pneumonia J189
- (b) Peritonitis K659
- (c) Intestinal obstruction K913
- II Colostomy - ulcerative colitis Y833 &K519

Code intestinal obstruction on I(c) as a complication of the surgery reported in Part II, since the surgery was abdominal and there is no indication that this procedure was performed 28 days or more prior to death.

- (3) When any of the conditions listed below are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and **surgery of the same site or region** is reported on the same line or in Part II, code complication as indexed and the surgery to appropriate external cause code (Y83-) where it is indicated on the record by the certifier.

Hemorrhage of a site  
Fistula of site(s)

- I (a) Pneumonia J189
- (b) Gastrointestinal hemorrhage T810
- II Gastrectomy for stomach cancer &Y836 &C169

Code gastrointestinal hemorrhage as a complication of the surgery reported in Part II since the surgery was of the same region and there is no indication that surgery was performed 28 days or more prior to death.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

- (4) When conditions listed in paragraph d(1), (2), and (3) are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and **surgery stated to have been performed 28 days or more prior to death** is reported on the same line or in Part II, code condition as indexed. Do not code as a complication of the surgery.

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Shock	R579
(c) Acute renal failure	N179
II Surgery performed 6 wks. ago for colon cancer	C189

Code all conditions on this record as indexed. Do not code acute renal failure as a complication of surgery since the surgery was performed 28 days or more prior to death.

- (5) When adhesions are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and **surgery stated to have been performed less than one year prior to death** is reported on same line or in Part II, code adhesions to K918 and code the surgery to appropriate E-code (Y83-).

I (a) Septic shock	A419
(b) Peritonitis	K659
(c) Adhesions	K918
II Surgery - 6 mos. ago for ca. of colon	Y839 &C189

Code adhesions on I(c) as a complication of surgery and code the external cause code for the surgery as the first entry in Part II. Code the condition for which surgery was performed and precede by an ampersand.

- (6) When adhesions are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and **surgery stated to have been performed one year or more prior to death** is reported on same line or in Part II, code adhesions to K918, Other postprocedural disorders of the digestive system and code the surgery to Y883, sequela of surgery.

I (a) Renal failure	N19
(b) Intestinal obstruction	K566
(c) Adhesions	K918
II Surgery - 16 months ago for diverticulitis	Y883 &K579

Code adhesions on I(c) as a complication of the surgery reported in Part II. Since this surgery was performed more than 1 year ago, code Y883 for the sequela of surgery. Code diverticulitis as the condition for which surgery was performed.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

e. Ill-defined condition as first entry on lowest used line in Part I

When an ill-defined condition classifiable to the following codes:

- I959 (Hypotension, unspecified)
- I99 except occlusion and infarction (Other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system)
- J960 (Acute respiratory failure)
- J969 (Respiratory failure, unspecified)
- P285 (Respiratory failure of newborn)
- R000-R568, R590-R948, R960-R99 (Symptoms, signs, and abnormal clinical and laboratory findings, not elsewhere classified)

is reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I with surgery reported on the same line or in Part II, proceed:

- (1) Code the ill-defined condition, then code the remaining conditions as if the ill-defined condition had not been reported.

- I (a) Senility and MI R54 T818
- II Gastrectomy &Y836 &K3190

Code senility on I(a) R54 as indexed. Then code MI as if senility had not been reported. MI is coded as the complication of the surgery reported in Part II. Gastrectomy indicates a disease of the stomach. Precede both the code for the surgery and the code for Disease, stomach, with an ampersand.

- I (a) Renal failure N990
- (b) Cause unknown R97
- II Mastectomy Y836 &N649

Code cause unknown on I(b) as indexed, then code renal failure as the complication of the surgery reported in Part II as if cause unknown had not been reported. Code Part II, mastectomy, Y836 N649. Code Disease, breast as the condition necessitating the mastectomy and precede it by an ampersand.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R****Exceptions:**

Code each entry as indexed when:

The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is	And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II
R000	B238                      I130-I461 B24                        I470-I519 I010-I099                J380-J399 I110-I119
R002	B238                      I130-I461 B24                        I470-I519 I010-I099 I110-I119
R010	B238                      I130-I461 B24                        I470-I519 I010-I099 I110-I119
R011	B238                      I130-I461 B24                        I470-I519 I010-I099 I110-I119

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

The first entry on the lowest used line in Part I is	And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II																		
R012	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B238</td> <td>I130-I461</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td>I470-I519</td> </tr> <tr> <td>I010-I099</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>I110-I119</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	B238	I130-I461	B24	I470-I519	I010-I099		I110-I119											
B238	I130-I461																		
B24	I470-I519																		
I010-I099																			
I110-I119																			
R02	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>A480</td> <td>I730-I739</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E100-E149</td> <td>K350-K389</td> </tr> <tr> <td>I702</td> <td>K400-K469</td> </tr> <tr> <td>I709</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	A480	I730-I739	E100-E149	K350-K389	I702	K400-K469	I709											
A480	I730-I739																		
E100-E149	K350-K389																		
I702	K400-K469																		
I709																			
R030	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B238</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>I10-I139</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	B238		B24		I10-I139													
B238																			
B24																			
I10-I139																			
R040	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B238</td> <td>J00-J019</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td>J068-J069</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C300-C319</td> <td>J300-J311</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C783</td> <td>J320-J348</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C910-C959</td> <td>J393-J399</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D023</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>D140</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>D385</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>I10</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	B238	J00-J019	B24	J068-J069	C300-C319	J300-J311	C783	J320-J348	C910-C959	J393-J399	D023		D140		D385		I10	
B238	J00-J019																		
B24	J068-J069																		
C300-C319	J300-J311																		
C783	J320-J348																		
C910-C959	J393-J399																		
D023																			
D140																			
D385																			
I10																			

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

The first entry on the lowest used line in Part I is	And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II	
R041	B238 B24 C090-C148 C320-C329 C783 C798 C910-C959 D000 D020 D104-D109	D141 D370 D380 J00 J020-J040 J042-J069 J311-J312 J350-J399
R042	A162-A169 A1690 B238 B24 C320-C349 C780 C783	C910-C959 D020-D022 D141-D143 D380-D381 J040-J22 J370-J387 J393-J989
R048	A162-A169 A1690 B238 B24 C320-C349 C780 C783	C910-C959 D020-D022 D141-D143 D380-D381 J040-J22 J370-J387 J393-J989

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

The first entry on the lowest used line in Part I is	And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II												
R090	B238 B24 T360-T659												
R11	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B238</td> <td>J1110</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td>J118</td> </tr> <tr> <td>J1010</td> <td>K250-K289</td> </tr> <tr> <td>J108</td> <td>K800-K820</td> </tr> </table>	B238	J1110	B24	J118	J1010	K250-K289	J108	K800-K820				
B238	J1110												
B24	J118												
J1010	K250-K289												
J108	K800-K820												
R17	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B150-B199</td> <td>C787-C788</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B238</td> <td>K700-K839</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>C220-C259</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	B150-B199	C787-C788	B238	K700-K839	B24		C220-C259					
B150-B199	C787-C788												
B238	K700-K839												
B24													
C220-C259													
R18	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B238</td> <td>C796</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td>C80-C969</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C160-C269</td> <td>K700-K709</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C56</td> <td>K730-K749</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C784</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>C787-C788</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	B238	C796	B24	C80-C969	C160-C269	K700-K709	C56	K730-K749	C784		C787-C788	
B238	C796												
B24	C80-C969												
C160-C269	K700-K709												
C56	K730-K749												
C784													
C787-C788													
R233	B238 B24 D690-D699												
R250-R258	G20-G219 G230-G259 G400-G419 G510-G519 G800-G839												

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

The first entry on the lowest used line in Part I is	And the condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II
R260-R268	A521 B238 B24
R270-R278	A521 B238 B24 G110-G119
R290	B238 B24 E200-E209
R298	B238 B24 G800-G839
R34	B238 B24 N200-N209 T795
R400-R402	B238 B24 E100-E15 K729 S020-S024 S026-S029 S060-S099 T902 T905-T909
R568	A35 B238 B24 G400-G419 O100-O11 O13-O16

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

The first entry on the lowest used line in Part I is	And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II								
R590	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B200-B222</td> <td>B270-B279</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B227</td> <td>C810-C969</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B231</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	B200-B222	B270-B279	B227	C810-C969	B231		B24	
B200-B222	B270-B279								
B227	C810-C969								
B231									
B24									
R591	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B200-B222</td> <td>B270-B279</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B227</td> <td>B588-B589</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B231</td> <td>C810-C969</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	B200-B222	B270-B279	B227	B588-B589	B231	C810-C969	B24	
B200-B222	B270-B279								
B227	B588-B589								
B231	C810-C969								
B24									
R599	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B200-B222</td> <td>B270-B279</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B227</td> <td>C810-C969</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B231</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	B200-B222	B270-B279	B227	C810-C969	B231		B24	
B200-B222	B270-B279								
B227	C810-C969								
B231									
B24									
R600-R609	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B238</td> <td>N000 - N059</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>E43</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>E877</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	B238	N000 - N059	B24		E43		E877	
B238	N000 - N059								
B24									
E43									
E877									
R630	F500								
R631	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>E232</td> </tr> <tr> <td>N251</td> </tr> </table>	E232	N251						
E232									
N251									
R730	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B238</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B24</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E100-E162</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E891</td> </tr> </table>	B238	B24	E100-E162	E891				
B238									
B24									
E100-E162									
E891									
R780	F100-F109								

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

---

**Part R**

The first entry on the lowest used line in Part I is	And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II
R80	B238                      N000-N079 B24                        N170-N19 C900                       N250-N289 D511 D649
R81	B238 B24 E100-E149 E748

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Coma	R402
II Surgery for diabetic gangrene	E145

Code I(a) and I(b) as indexed. Coma is reported as the first condition on the lowest used line, **but** diabetic gangrene is reported in Part II. Therefore, pneumonia cannot be coded as a complication of surgery. Do not enter a code for surgery since no complication is reported.

I (a) Aspiration pneumonia	J690
(b) Jaundice	R17
II Cholecystectomy for gallstones	K802

Code I(a) and I(b) as indexed. Jaundice is reported as the first condition on the lowest used line with gallstones reported in Part II. Therefore, aspiration pneumonia cannot be coded as a complication of surgery. Code Part II, K802 (gallstones). Do not enter a code for the cholecystectomy since no complication was reported.

I (a) Sepsis	A419
(b) Gangrene, pneumonia, and	R02 J189 I709
(c) arteriosclerosis	
II Surgery	

Code I(a) and I(b) as indexed. Gangrene is reported as the first condition on the lowest used line, but arteriosclerosis is reported on the same line; therefore, pneumonia cannot be a complication of surgery. Do not enter a code for surgery since no complication is reported.

f. Relating surgical procedure to condition for which surgery was performed

- (1) When a condition of unspecified site is reported with surgery of a defined site, code the condition of unspecified site to the defined site.

I (a) Aneurysm	I719
II Operation for aortic aneurysm	I719

Code I(a), aneurysm of unspecified site to aortic aneurysm, I719, since the surgery is of a defined site. Code aortic aneurysm in Part II. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

- (2) When a condition of a site is reported with surgery of a more defined part of the site, code the condition to the more specified site.

I (a) Carcinoma colon C186  
II Left colectomy

Code I(a), carcinoma colon to carcinoma left colon, C186, since the surgery is of a more specified part of the colon. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

I (a) Valvular heart disease I059 I069  
II Status post mitral and aortic valve repair

Code I (a) valvular heart disease of unspecified valve to disease, mitral and aortic valves since the surgery is of specified valves. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

- (3) When a condition of a site is reported with surgery for the same condition of unspecified or a less defined part of the site, code the condition to the most defined site.

I (a) Cancer of head of pancreas C250  
II Pancreatectomy for cancer C250

Code I(a), cancer head of pancreas, C250. Code Part II as cancer of head of pancreas since elsewhere a more defined site was reported of the condition for which surgery was performed. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

- (4) Do not apply these instructions when more than one condition or a condition of multiple specified sites which could have necessitated the surgery is reported.

I (a) Cardiac arrest I469  
(b) Respiratory arrest R092  
(c) Carcinoma of lung, liver, brain C349 C787 C793  
II Findings of operation: Carcinoma C80

Code I(a), I(b) and I(c) as indexed and according to neoplasm instructions. Code Part II, carcinoma, C80. Do not code the carcinoma to a more defined site since multiple specified sites are reported for which the surgery could have been performed. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

g. Complications of amputation and amputation stump

When a complication (stated or implied) occurs as a result of an amputation, code the complication to Chapters I-XIX. When the complication is classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII and the condition that necessitated the amputation is not reported, precede the code for the complication with an ampersand.

- |   |                                  |       |
|---|----------------------------------|-------|
| I | (a) Renal failure                | &N990 |
|   | (b) Below knee amputation of leg | Y835  |

Code I(a), renal failure, N990 as the complication of surgery. Code I(b), below knee amputation of leg, Y835. Precede the N990 with an ampersand since it is classified to Chapter XIV and the condition that necessitated the amputation is not reported.

When there is a complication of an amputation stump, code the complication to T873-T876 or to the appropriate code in Chapters I-XVIII. (Do not use T873-T876 for “stump” of internal organs).

- |   |                               |            |
|---|-------------------------------|------------|
| I | (a) Infected amputation stump | T874 &Y835 |
|   | (b) Osteosarcoma of leg       | &C402      |

Code I(a), infected amputation stump T874 Y835. Precede the E-code, Y835, by an ampersand. Code I(b), osteosarcoma of leg, C402. Precede C402 by an ampersand to indicate the condition that necessitated the amputation.

3. Complications of medical procedures other than surgical (Y84)

Medical procedures are any type of nonsurgical procedures used in the treatment of diseases or injuries. The external cause is classified to Y840-Y849. Although almost any condition reported due to medical procedures other than surgical is regarded as a complication, there are a few diseases that are not considered complications. Do not code the conditions listed under 2. a. (1) (a) in Section V, Part R as complications of medical procedures. If the reason for the medical procedure is not reported, do not assume a disease condition. (The medical procedure other than surgical is not coded when there is no evidence of a complication).

- a. When a condition is reported due to a named medical procedure other than a surgical operation or is modified by a named procedure and can be considered as a complication(s) or adverse effect, code as follows:

**STEP 1:** Determine if the complication is in the Index qualified by the specific procedure reported.

I (a) Kidney blockage	&N990
(b) Postcystoscopic procedure	Y848

Code I(a) as indexed using **Step 1:**

Block  
- kidney  
- - postcystoscopic or postprocedural N99.0.

Code I(b) Y848 as indexed under Complication, procedures other than surgical operation, specified NEC. Precede N990 with an ampersand.

**STEP 2:** If the Index does not qualify the complication with the specified procedure, determine if the procedure is indexed under Complications (from) (of).

I	(a) Urinary tract infection	T835
	(b) Post-indwelling urinary catheter	&Y846

Code I(a) using **Step 2:**

Complications (from) (of)  
 - catheter (device)  
 - - urinary (indwelling)  
 - - - infection or inflammation T83.5

Select infection or inflammation since urinary tract infection is an infectious condition.

Code I(b) Y846 as indexed under Complication, catheter, catheterization (urinary). Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

I	(a) Pulmonary embolism	T838
	(b) Catheter	&Y846

Code I(a) using **Step 2:**

Complications (from) (of)  
 - catheter (device)  
 - - specified NEC T83.8

Select specified since pulmonary embolism is a specified complication.

Code I(b) Y846 as indexed under Complication, catheter, catheterization (urinary). Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

---

### Part R

When the Index does not provide for the term as specified in **STEP 1** and **STEP 2**, code the complication as if procedure NOS was reported instead of the named medical procedure as defined in the following instructions:

**NOTE:** Before continuing to **STEP 3**, it is important to determine the nature of the named procedure.

I (a) Peritonitis	T802
(b) Peritoneal lavage	&Y841
(c) Chronic renal failure	&N189

The procedure peritoneal lavage is not indexed under Complications (from) (of) in Section II. To code the complication and procedure correctly, the type of procedure reported must be determined. Peritoneal lavage is defined in Dorland's Illustrated Medical Dictionary as "dialysis by installation into the peritoneal cavity.....". Following this definition, peritoneal lavage should be coded as dialysis.

Code I(a) using Step 2:

Complications (from) (of)  
- dialysis (renal) (see also Complications, infusion)  
- infusion  
- - infection NEC T80.2

Select infection since peritonitis is an infectious condition.

Code I(b) Y841 as indexed under Complication, dialysis (kidney). Precede the E-code and the condition requiring treatment with an ampersand.

b. When a condition that is

- (1) reported due to a named procedure cannot be assigned a code using **STEP 1** or **STEP 2** or
- (2) reported due to a procedure other than surgical operation NOS or therapy NOS, and can be considered as a complication(s) or adverse effect, code as follows:

**STEP 3:** Determine if the complication is in the Index, qualified:

- (a) as reported
- (b) with any term meaning “due to” procedure or medical care (see Section II, Part C, 2, a, “Due to” written in or implied)
- (c) as postprocedural

I	(a)	Renal failure	&N990
	(b)	Paracentesis	Y844

Code I(a) as indexed using **Step 3 (c)**:

Failure  
 - renal  
 - - postprocedural N99.0

Code I(b) Y844 as indexed under Complication, paracentesis. Precede N990 with an ampersand.

**STEP 4:** If the Index does not provide a code for the complication in Steps 1-3, determine if:

- (a) the site of the complication is in the Index under Complications (from) (of)
  - medical procedure
- or**
- (b) the system in which the complication occurred (based upon the code assigned in the Index) is in the Index under Complications (from) (of)
  - medical procedure
- (c) the system in which the complication occurred (based upon the code assigned in the Index) is in the Index under Complications (from) (of)
  - postprocedural

I	(a) Cardiac arrest	T818
	(b) Therapy	&Y849
	(c) Arteriosclerotic heart disease	&I251

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (a)**:

Complications (from) (of)  
 - medical procedure  
 - - cardiac T81.8

Select cardiac since this is the site of the complication.

Code I(b) Y849 as indexed under Complication, procedures other than surgical operation. Precede the E-code and the condition requiring treatment with an ampersand.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

---

I (a) Pulmonary edema	&J958
(b) Endotracheal tube	Y848

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (b)**:

Complications (from) (of)  
- medical procedure  
- - respiratory  
- - - specified NEC J95.8

Select respiratory, specified since pulmonary edema is classified to J81, a specified disease in the respiratory system.

Code I(b) Y848 as indexed under Complication, procedures other than surgical operation, specified NEC. Precede J958 with an ampersand.

I (a) Stroke	I64
(b) Cerebral embolism	T817
(c) Renal angiogram	&Y848

Code I(b) using **Step 4 (b)**:

Complications (from) (of)  
- medical procedure  
- - circulatory T81.7

Select circulatory since cerebral embolism is classified to I634, a specified disease in the circulatory system.

Code I(c) Y848 as indexed under Complications, procedure other than surgical operation, specified NEC. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

**STEP 5:** When a reported specified complication cannot be classified to a system that is indexed, code T818, Other complications of procedures, not elsewhere classified.

I (a) Shock	R579
(b) Coagulation disorder	T818
(c) Hyperthermia therapy	&Y848

Coagulation disorder is not indexed as due to a procedure or as postprocedural. This condition is classified to D689, a disease of the blood-forming organs. Neither the term nor the body system is indexed under Complications (from) (of), medical procedure.

Code I(b) using **Step 5:**

Complications (from) (of)  
- procedure  
- - specified T81.8

Select specified since coagulation disorder is a specified complication.

Code I(c) Y848 as indexed under Complication, procedures other than surgical operation, specified NEC. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

4. Complications of procedures involving administration of drugs, radiation, and instruments

- a. Many procedures (e.g., angiogram, barium enema, pyelogram) involve the administration of drugs and the use of x-ray or radioactive substances and various instruments. When complications of these procedures are reported, determine, if possible, which specific part of the procedure caused the complication. Assign the appropriate codes for the complication and the procedure. When the complication is classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII and the reason for the procedure is not reported, precede the code for the complication with an ampersand. If the reason for the medical care is not reported, do not assume a disease condition.

I (a) Pulmonary embolism	T828
(b) Cardiac catheterization	&Y840
(c) Ventricular septal defect	&Q210

Code I(a) as the complication of the catheterization reported on I(b). Code I(b) as indexed, Y840 and precede with an ampersand. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the procedure.

I (a) Barium impaction of intestine	Y575 K564
(b) Barium enema	
(c) Colon polyps	&K635

Code the barium on I(a) to adverse effect in therapeutic use, Y575, since it was the drug that caused the impaction. Code the complication, impaction, as indexed, Impaction, intestine, K564. Do not enter a code on I(b) for barium since it was reported on I(a). Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the procedure.

I (a) Anaphylactic shock	T886
(b) Contrast medium (aortogram)	&Y575
II Dissecting aortic arch aneurysm	&I710

Code I(a) as the complication of the contrast medium. Indexed as Shock, anaphylactic, correct substance properly administered. Code I(b) contrast medium as adverse effect in therapeutic use, since the drug caused the anaphylactic shock. Code Part II as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the procedure.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

I (a) Peritonitis	K659
(b) Hemorrhage of colon	K918
(c) Barium enema	Y848
(d) Diverticulitis	&K579

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as the complication of the administration of the enema. Code I(c) barium enema, Y848, since the hemorrhage most likely resulted from the administration of the enema rather than the barium. Code I(d) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the procedure.

I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage	T817
(b) Cerebral arteriogram	&Y848

Code I(a) as the complication of the arteriogram. Code I(b) cerebral arteriogram, Y848, since the hemorrhage resulted from the procedure and precede with an ampersand. Do not assume a disease condition for the cerebral arteriogram.

- b. When a complication results from the administration of anesthesia, code the complication as indexed and code the appropriate external cause code (Y480-Y485) (refer to Section V, Part R, 1, Drugs, medicaments and biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use).

I (a) Cardiac failure	I509
(b) Anesthesia for prostate surgery	Y484
(c)	&N429

Code I(a) as indexed and as the complication of the anesthesia. Code I(b) anesthesia to adverse effect in therapeutic use, Y484, since it was the anesthesia that caused the heart failure. Code I(c) N429, disease prostate, as the reason for surgery and precede with an ampersand.

I (a) Cardiac failure	T818
(b) Prostate surgery under anesthesia	&Y839
(c) Benign prostatic hypertrophy	&N40

Code I(a) as indexed under Failure, heart, complicating surgery. Code I(b) prostate surgery as indexed. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for surgery.

---

5. Complications of radiation during medical care (Y842)

When a complication results from exposure to radiation, except radio-frequency radiation, infrared heaters or lamps and visible or ultraviolet light sources, consider as exposure of patient to radiation during medical care unless there is information on the certificate that indicates otherwise. Code complications of radiation during medical care as follows:

a. Complications qualified as “radiation,” “radiation-induced,” “due to radiation,” or “following radiation”

(1) Coding the complication

(a) If the Index provides a code for the complication qualified by one of these terms, use that code.

(b) If the Index does not provide a code for the complication qualified by one of these terms, code the complication as indexed without the qualifier.

(2) Placement of codes

(a) If the complication is qualified as “radiation” or “radiation-induced” and classified to Chapters I-XVIII, code the external cause code followed by the code for the complication.

(b) If the complication is qualified as “radiation” or “radiation-induced” and classified to Chapter XIX, code the nature of injury code followed by the external cause code.

b. Code the external cause code to Y842, (Radiological procedure and radiotherapy).

c. Use of ampersand

(1) If the reason for the radiation therapy is reported, precede the code for this condition with an ampersand.

(2) If the reason for the radiation therapy is not reported and a malignant neoplasm is reported, precede the code for the neoplasm with an ampersand.

(3) If the reason for the radiation therapy is not reported and the complication is classified to Chapters I-XVIII, precede the complication with an ampersand.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| I (a) Pulmonary edema                      | J81       |
| (b) Radiation pneumonitis                  | Y842 J700 |
| (c) Radiation therapy for cancer of breast |           |
| (d)  | &C509     |

Code I(b) to the external cause code as indexed where the radiation is first reported followed by the code for the complication. Pneumonitis is the complication of the radiation and is indexed, Pneumonitis, radiation. Precede the code for cancer of breast with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

- |                          |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Carcinomatosis     | C80       |
| (b) Oat cell carcinoma   | &C349     |
| (c)                      |           |
| II X-ray fibrosis - lung | Y842 J701 |

Code Part II to the external cause code as indexed followed by the code for the complication. Fibrosis of lung is the complication and is indexed, Fibrosis, lung, following radiation. Code I(b) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

- |                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Pneumonia       | J700  |
| (b) Radiation         | Y842  |
| (c) Carcinoma of face | &C760 |

Pneumonia is the complication of the radiation reported on I(b). Code I(a) as indexed, Pneumonia, radiation. Code the external cause code as indexed on I(b). Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

- |                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Debility        | R53   |
| (b) Radiation therapy | Y842  |
| (c) Hodgkin's disease | &C819 |

Debility is the complication of the radiation reported on I(b). Code I(a) as indexed since the Classification does not provide a code for radiation debility. Code the external cause as indexed on I(b). Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

I (a) Radiation-induced acute	Y842 J700
(b) bronchitis	
II Carcinoma of trachea	&C33

Code I(a) to the external cause code as indexed, followed by the code for the complication. Acute bronchitis is the complication and is indexed Bronchitis, acute, due to radiation. Code Part II as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

I (a) Alopecia	L581
(b) Radiation	Y842
II Hodgkin's granuloma	&C817

Alopecia is the complication of the radiation reported on I(b). Code I(a) as indexed under Alopecia, X-ray. Code the external cause as indexed on I(b). Code Part II as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

I (a) Peritonitis	K659
(b) Intestinal fistula	&K632
(c) Radiation therapy	Y842

Intestinal fistula is the complication of the radiation reported on I(c). Code I(b) as indexed since the Classification does not provide a code for radiation intestinal fistula. Code the external cause as indexed on I(c). Precede the complication (intestinal fistula) with an ampersand since it is classified to Chapters I-XVIII and the reason for the radiation was not reported.

- d. When radiation fibrosis is reported without a site or of a site not indexed, code the fibrosis to T66, Complications, radiation.

I (a) Cerebral anoxia	G931
(b) Carcinoma of tongue	&C029
II Radiation fibrosis, upper airway obstruction	T66 &Y842 J988

Code Part II Complications, radiation for the fibrosis and the external cause code as indexed. Code the nature of injury followed by the external cause code. Place an ampersand preceding the E-code and the condition on I(b) to indicate the reason for the radiation.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

I (a) Radiation pelvic fibrosis	T66 &Y842
(b) Carcinoma of uterus	&C55

Code I(a) Complications, radiation for the pelvic fibrosis and the external cause code as indexed. Code the nature of injury code followed by the external cause code. Place an ampersand preceding the E-code and the condition on I(b) to indicate the reason for the radiation.

6. Misadventures to patients during surgical and medical care (Y60-Y69)

Except for poisoning, overdose of drug and wrong drug given in error, code most misadventures (accidents or errors) to patients during surgical and medical care to Complications of surgical and medical care (T800-T889) in the nature of injury chapter and to Y600-Y69 in the external cause chapter. Code burns from local applications or irradiation to burns in the nature of injury chapter and to Y600-Y69 in the external cause chapter. Code trauma from instruments during delivery to Chapter XV and do not use an external cause code. A limited number of conditions attributable to misadventure to patient (Y600-Y69) in the external cause code, e.g., serum hepatitis, are classified to Chapters I-XVIII.

**Indications of Misadventures**

Hemorrhage (of a site) Rupture (of a site)	Stated as intraoperative or during medical and surgical care
Cut or cutting (of a site) Perforation (of a site) Puncture (of a site) Laceration (of a site)	Reported as postoperative, intraoperative, during or due to medical and surgical care
Burns (of a site)	From local applications or irradiation
Serum hepatitis	From blood transfusions

This list is not all inclusive.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

### Part R

---

When a misadventure to patient during surgical and medical care (classifiable to Y600-Y69) is reported and the condition, which necessitated the surgical or medical care, is stated or implied, precede the code for this condition with an ampersand.

- |                         |       |
|-------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Hemorrhage during | T810  |
| (b) craniotomy          | &Y600 |
| (c) Brain tumor         | &D432 |

Code I(a) Complication, surgical procedure, hemorrhage. Since “during” is stated, interpret I(b) as a misadventure and code Misadventure, hemorrhage, surgical operation. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for surgery.

- |                            |       |
|----------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Perforation of colon | T812  |
| (b) Laparotomy             | &Y600 |

Code I(a) Perforation, surgical. Interpret I(b) as a misadventure and code Misadventure, perforation, surgical operation.

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| I (a) Cardiac tamponade                        | I319       |
| (b) Perforation of auricle by cardiac catheter | T812 &Y605 |
| II Therapeutic misadventure                    | T889       |

The perforation occurred during a cardiac catheterization. Code I(b) as accidental perforation of organ during a procedure, and accidental perforation during a heart catheterization. Code Part II as indexed, Misadventure (prophylactic) (therapeutic).

- |                                      |            |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Peritonitis                    | K659       |
| (b) Accidental perforation of        | T812 &Y607 |
| (c) colon                            |            |
| II Self-administered tap water enema |            |

I(b) is a reported misadventure occurring during medical care. Code T812, accidental perforation during a procedure and Y607, accidental perforation during the administration of an enema.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

### Part R

---

- |       |                   |       |
|-------|-------------------|-------|
| I (a) | Serum hepatitis   | B169  |
| (b)   | Blood transfusion | Y640  |
| (c)   | Leukemia          | &C959 |

Serum hepatitis is a misadventure occurring during a blood transfusion. Code I(a) B169, serum hepatitis, and I(b) Y640, Contaminated medical or biological substance transfused or infused. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the transfusion.

- |       |                     |       |
|-------|---------------------|-------|
| I (a) | Burns               | T300  |
| (b)   | Radiation therapy   | &Y632 |
| (c)   | Cancer of esophagus | &C159 |

Code I(a) T300, radiation burns. Code I(b) Y632, Overdose of radiation given during therapy. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

- |       |                   |     |
|-------|-------------------|-----|
| I (a) | HIV               | B24 |
| (b)   | Blood transfusion |     |
| (c)   | Hemophilia        | D66 |

Code line (a) and (c) as indexed. No code for line (b) since there are no complications reported. Do not consider HIV (any B20-B24) as a misadventure occurring during a blood transfusion.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

**Part S**

S. Sequela of injuries, poisonings, and other consequences of external causes

1. Sequela of injuries, poisoning, and other consequences of external causes (T900-T983)

Use these categories for the classification of injuries and poisonings (conditions in S00-T88) if:

a. A statement of sequela of the condition in S00-T88 is reported unless the interval between date of injury and date of death is less than 1 year.

- I (a) Sequela of hip fracture T931
- (b)
- (c)
- II &Y86

Code I(a) to T931 since it is stated as a sequela of hip fracture. Code Part II as sequela of accident NEC.

b. The condition in S00-T88 is stated to be ancient, chronic, healed, history of, late effect of, old, remote, regardless of reported duration, or the interval between onset of this condition and death is indicated to be 1 year or more, whether or not the residual (sequela) effect is specified.

Date of death 12/1/98

- I (a) Old head injury T909
- MOD II &Y86

A

Accident	Farm	Date of injury 9/3/98	Tractor overturned
----------	------	-----------------------	--------------------

Code I(a) old head injury to Sequela, injury, head since it is stated as old. Interpret “tractor overturning on farm” as contact with agricultural machinery. Code Part II accident - tractor overturned to sequela of other accidents since it resulted in an injury stated as old.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

**Part S**

- c. A chronic condition with or without a duration is reported due to a condition in S00-T88.

Date of Death 12/5/98

I (a) Chronic pyelitis	N119
(b) Quadriplegia	T913
(c) Fracture cervical spine	T911
II	&Y850

MOD

A

Accident	Date of injury 3/14/98	2 car collision
----------	------------------------	-----------------

Code I(a) chronic pyelitis as indexed. Code I(b) Quadriplegia, traumatic as indexed. Code I(c) fracture cervical spine to sequela of fracture of spine since it caused a chronic condition. Code Part II accident - 2 car collision, to Sequela, motor vehicle accident since it resulted in injuries that caused a chronic condition.

- d. A condition with a duration of 1 year or more that was due to the condition in S00-T88 is reported.

I (a) Paralysis	16 mos.	T941
(b) Spinal cord injury		T913
(c) Auto accident		&Y850

Code I(a) paralysis to sequela of traumatic paralysis since it is reported due to trauma and has a duration of 1 year or more. Code I(b) spinal cord injury to Sequela, injury, spinal, cord since it caused a condition of 1 year or more. Code I(c) auto accident, to Sequela, motor vehicle accident.

- e. More than one nature of injury or a nature of injury and an external cause are reported on the same line with a duration of 1 year or more, apply the duration to each condition.

I (a) Head injury and skull fracture	Years	T909	T902
(b)			
II Fall		&Y86	

Code both conditions on (a) as sequela. Do not disregard the duration since there is more than one injury on same line.

I (a) Gunshot wound head	Years	T901	&Y86
--------------------------	-------	------	------

Code both head wound and gunshot as sequela. Apply duration to nature of injury and external cause.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

**Part S**

2. Sequela of external causes (Y850-Y899)

- Y850 Sequela of motor vehicle accident (includes V01-V89)
- Y859 Sequela of other and unspecified transport accidents (includes V90-V99)
- Y86 Sequela of other accidents (excludes W78-W80)
- Y870 Sequela of intentional self-harm
- Y871 Sequela of assault
- Y872 Sequela of events of undetermined intent
- Y880 Sequela of adverse effects caused by drugs, medicaments, and biological substances in therapeutic use
- Y881 Sequela of misadventures to patients during surgical and medical procedures
- Y882 Sequela of adverse incidents associated with medical devices in diagnostic and therapeutic use
- Y883 Sequela of surgical and medical procedures as the cause of abnormal reaction of the patient, or of later complication, without mention of misadventure at the time of the procedure
- Y890 Sequela of legal intervention
- Y891 Sequela of war operations
- Y899 Sequela of unspecified external cause

Use the preceding categories with the appropriate fourth characters for the classification of external causes of injury (V010-Y849) if:

- a. A statement of sequela of the external cause is reported unless the interval between date of external cause and date of death is less than 1 year.

- I (a) Paralysis, sequela of T941 & Y86
- (b) fall down steps

Code I(a) to sequela of traumatic paralysis and sequela of fall down the steps.

- b. An injury that is stated to be ancient, healed, history of, late effect of, old, remote, or a delayed union, malunion or nonunion of a fracture that was due to the external cause is reported.

- I (a) Pneumonia J189
- MOD (b) Debility R53
- A (c) Nonunion of hip fracture M841
- II Inanition R64 Y86



Code I(c) as indexed. Code sequela of fall last in Part II since the fall resulted in nonunion of the fracture.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

---

**Part S**

- I (a) ASHD I251
- II Old fractured hip T931 &Y86

Code I(a) ASHD as indexed. Code Part II old fractured hip, T931 Y86 since the injury was specified as old.

- c. If the external cause is stated to be ancient, history of, old, remote, regardless of reported duration, or the interval between onset of the external cause and death is indicated to be 1 year or more.

- I (a) Old fall, fractured hip 6 months T931 &Y86
  - (b)
  - (c)
- MOD II T931
- A
- |          |                                     |
|----------|-------------------------------------|
| Accident | Fell and fractured hip 6 months ago |
|----------|-------------------------------------|

Code as sequela since the external cause is stated as “old.”

- d. A chronic condition with or without a duration is reported due to conditions in V010-Y849 (excludes W78-W80).

- I (a) Chronic subdural hematoma T905
- (b) Fall &Y86

Code I(a) chronic subdural hematoma to Sequela, hematoma, subdural since it is reported as chronic. Code I(b) fall as sequela of accident NEC since it resulted in a chronic condition.

- I (a) Respiratory arrest R092
- (b) COPD J958
- (c) Post status lobectomy - ca. of lung Y883 &C349

Code I(a) respiratory arrest as indexed. Code I(b) COPD as a complication of the surgery reported on I(c). Code I(c) lobectomy to Sequela, surgical and medical procedures as the cause of abnormal reaction of the patient, or of later complication, without mention of misadventure at the time of the procedure since it resulted in a chronic condition.



**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

---

**Part S**

g. The complication of the external cause classified to Chapters I-XVIII and the external cause is reported on the same line and the duration is 1 year or more.

I (a) Radiation enteritis	3 years	Y883 K520
(b) Lung cancer		&C349

Code I(a) as a sequela of radiation therapy. Do not disregard the duration. Precede the code for the lung cancer with an ampersand to indicate the reason for medical care.

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

When an abbreviation is reported on the certificate, refer to this list to determine what the abbreviation represents. **If an abbreviation represents more than one term, determine the correct abbreviation by using other information on the certificate.** If no determination can be made, use abbreviation for first term listed.

AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm	AEG	air encephalogram
AAS	aortic arch syndrome	AF	auricular or atrial fibrillation; acid fast
AAT	alpha-antitrypsin	AFB	acid-fast bacillus
AAV	AIDS-associated virus	AGG	agammaglobulinemia
AB	abdomen; abortion; asthmatic bronchitis	AGL	acute granulocytic leukemia
ABD	abdomen	AGN	acute glomerulonephritis
ABE	acute bacterial endocarditis	AGS	adrenogenital syndrome
ABS	acute brain syndrome	AHA	acquired hemolytic anemia; autoimmune hemolytic anemia
ACA	adenocarcinoma	AHD	arteriosclerotic heart disease
ACD	arteriosclerotic coronary disease	AHHD	arteriosclerotic hypertensive heart disease
ACH	adrenal cortical hormone	AHG	anti-hemophilic globulin deficiency
ACT	acute coronary thrombosis	AHLE	acute hemorrhagic leukoencephalitis
ACTH	adrenocorticotrophic hormone	AI	aortic insufficiency; additional information
ACVD	arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease	AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
ADEM	acute disseminated encephalomyelitis	AKA	above knee amputation
ADH	antidiuretic hormone		
ADS	antibody deficiency syndrome		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

ALC	alcoholism	ARV	AIDS-related virus
ALL	acute lymphocytic leukemia	ARVD	arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	AS	arteriosclerotic; arteriosclerosis; aortic stenosis
AMI	acute myocardial infarction	ASA	acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin)
AML	acute myelocytic leukemia	ASAD	arteriosclerotic artery disease
ANS	arteriolonephrosclerosis	ASCAD	arteriosclerotic coronary artery disease
AOD	arterial occlusive disease	ASCD	arteriosclerotic coronary disease
AODM	adult onset diabetes mellitus	ASCHD	arteriosclerotic coronary heart disease
AOM	acute otitis media	ASCRD	arteriosclerotic cardiorenal disease
AP	angina pectoris; anterior and posterior repair; artificial pneumothorax; anterior pituitary	ASCVA	arteriosclerotic cerebrovascular accident
A&P	anterior and posterior repair	ASCVD	arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease
APC	auricular premature contraction; acetylsalicylic acid, acetophenetidin, and caffeine	ASCVR	arteriosclerotic cardiovascular renal disease
APE	acute pulmonary edema; anterior pituitary extract	ASCVRD	arteriosclerotic cardiovascular renal disease
APH	antepartum hemorrhage	ASD	atrial septal defect
AR	aortic regurgitation	ASDHD	arteriosclerotic decompensated heart disease
ARC	AIDS-related complex		
ARDS	adult respiratory distress syndrome		
ARF	acute respiratory failure, acute renal failure		
ARM	artificial rupture of membranes		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

ASHCVD	arteriosclerotic hypertensive cardiovascular disease	AVH	acute viral hepatitis
ASHD	arteriosclerotic heart disease; atrioseptal heart defect	AVP	aortic valve prosthesis
ASHHD	arteriosclerotic hypertensive heart disease	AVR	aortic valve replacement
ASHVD	arteriosclerotic hypertensive vascular disease	AWMI	anterior wall myocardial infarction
ASO	arteriosclerosis obliterans	AZT	azidothymidine
ASPVD	arteriosclerotic peripheral vascular disease	BA	basilar artery; basilar arteriogram; bronchial asthma
ASVD	arteriosclerotic vascular disease	B&B	bronchoscopy and biopsy
ASVH(D)	arteriosclerotic vascular heart disease	BBB	bundle branch block
AT	atherosclerosis; atherosclerotic; atrial tachycardia; antithrombin	B&C	biopsy and cauterization
ATC	all-terrain cycle	BCE	basal cell epithelioma
ATN	acute tubular necrosis	BE	barium enema
ATS	arteriosclerosis	BEH	benign essential hypertension
ATSHD	arteriosclerotic heart disease	BGL	Bartholin's gland
ATV	all-terrain vehicle	BKA	below knee amputation
AUL	acute undifferentiated leukemia	BL	bladder; bucolingual; blood loss; Burkett's lymphoma
AV	arteriovenous; atrioventricular; aortic valve	BMR	basal metabolism rate
AVF	arterio-ventricular fibrillation; arteriovenous fistula	BNA	bladder neck adhesions
		BNO	bladder neck obstruction
		BOMSA	bilateral otitis media serous acute

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

BOMSC	bilateral otitis media serous chronic	CAS	cerebral arteriosclerosis
BOW	“bag of water” (membrane)	CASCVD	chronic arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease
B/P, BP	blood pressure	CASHD	chronic arteriosclerotic heart disease
BPH	benign prostate hypertrophy	CAT	computerized axial tomography
BSA	body surface area	CB	chronic bronchitis
BSO	bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy	CBC	complete blood count
BSP	Bromosulfaphthalein (test)	CBD	common bile duct; chronic brain disease
BTL	bilateral tubal ligation	CBS	chronic brain syndrome
BUN	blood, urea, and nitrogen test	CCF	chronic congestive failure
BVL	bilateral vas ligation	CCI	chronic cardiac or coronary insufficiency
B&W	Baldy-Webster suspension (uterine)	CF	congestive failure; cystic fibrosis; Christmas factor (PTC)
BX	biopsy	CFT	chronic follicular tonsillitis
BX CX	biopsy cervix	CGL	chronic granulocytic leukemia
Ca	cancer	CGN	chronic glomerulonephritis
CA	cancer; cardiac arrest; carotid arteriogram	CHA	congenital hypoplastic anemia
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft	CHB	complete heart block
CABS	coronary artery bypass surgery	CHD	congestive heart disease; coronary heart disease; congenital heart disease; Chediak-Higaski Disease
CAD	coronary artery disease		
CAG	chronic atrophic gastritis		
CAO	coronary artery occlusion; chronic airway obstruction		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

CHF	congestive heart failure	COOMBS	test for Rh sensitivity
C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> OH	ethyl alcohol	COLD	chronic obstructive lung disease
CI	cardiac insufficiency; cerebral infarction	COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
CID	cytomegalic inclusion disease	COPE	chronic obstructive pulmonary emphysema
CIS	carcinoma in situ	CP	cerebral palsy; cor pulmonale
CJD	Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease	C&P	cystoscopy and pyelography
CLD	chronic lung disease; chronic liver disease	CPB	cardiopulmonary bypass
CLL	chronic lymphatic leukemia; chronic lymphocytic leukemia	CPC	chronic passive congestion
CMID	cytomegalic inclusion disease	CPD	cephalopelvic disproportion; contagious pustular dermatitis
CML	chronic myelocytic leukemia	CPE	chronic pulmonary emphysema
CMM	cutaneous malignant melanoma	CRD	chronic renal disease
CMV	cytomegalic virus	CREST	calcinosis cutis, Raynaud's phenomenon, sclerodactyly, and telangiectasis
CNHD	congenital nonspherocytic hemolytic disease	CRF	cardiorespiratory failure; chronic renal failure
CNS	central nervous system	CRST	calcinosis cutis, Raynaud's phenomenon, sclerodactyly, and telangiectasis
CO	carbon monoxide	CS	coronary sclerosis; cesarean section; cerebro-spinal
COAD	chronic obstructive airway disease	CSF	cerebral spinal fluid
CO <sub>2</sub>	carbon dioxide	CSH	chronic subdural hematoma
COBE	chronic obstructive bullous emphysema		
COBS	chronic organic brain syndrome		
COFS	cerebro-oculo-facio-skeletal		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

CSM	cerebrospinal meningitis	DCR	dacrocystorhinostomy
CT	computer tomography; cerebral thrombosis; coronary thrombosis	D&D	drilling and drainage; debridement and dressing
CTD	congenital thymic dysplasia	D&E	dilation and evacuation
CU	cause unknown	DFU	dead fetus in utero
CUC	chronic ulcerative colitis	DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
CUP	cystoscopy, urogram, pyelogram (retro)	DILD	diffuse infiltrative lung disease
CUR	cystocele, urethrocele, rectocele	DIP	distal interphalangeal joint; desquamative interstitial pneumonia
CV	cardiovascular; cerebrovascular	DJD	degenerative joint disease
CVA	cerebral vascular accident	DM	diabetes mellitus
CV Accident	cerebral vascular accident	DMT	dimethyltriptamine
CVD	cardiovascular disease	DOA	dead on arrival
CVHD	cardiovascular heart disease	DOPS	diffuse obstructive pulmonary syndrome
CVI	cardiovascular insufficiency; cerebral vascular insufficiency	DPT	diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus vaccine
CVRD	cardiovascular renal disease	DR	diabetic retinopathy
CWP	coal worker's pneumoconiosis	DS	Down's syndrome
CX	cervix	DT	due to; delirium tremens
DA	degenerative arthritis	D/T	due to; delirium tremens
DBI	phenformin hydrochloride	DU	diagnosis unknown; duodenal ulcer
D&C	dilation and curettage		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

DUB	dysfunctional uterine bleeding	EMC	encephalomyocarditis
DUI	driving under influence	EMD	electromechanical dissociation
DVT	deep vein thrombosis	EMF	endomyocardial fibrosis
DWI	driving while intoxicated	EMG	electromyogram
DX	dislocation; diagnosis; disease	EN	erythema nodosum
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus	ENT	ear, nose, and throat
ECCE	extracapsular cataract extraction	EP	ectopic pregnancy
ECG	electrocardiogram	ER	emergency room
E coli	Escherichia coli	ERS	evacuation of retained secundines
ECT	electric convulsive therapy	ESRD	end-stage renal disease
EDC	expected date of confinement	EST	electric shock therapy
EEE	Eastern equine encephalitis	ETOH	alcohol
EEG	electroencephalogram	EUA	exam under anesthesia
EFE	endocardial fibroelastosis	EWB	estrogen withdrawal bleeding
EGL	eosinophilic granuloma of lung	FB	foreign body
EH	enlarged heart; essential hypertension	FBS	fasting blood sugar
EIOA	excessive intake of alcohol	Fe	symbol for iron
EKC	epidemic keratoconjunctivitis	FGD	fatal granulomatous disease
EKG	electrocardiogram	FHS	fetal heart sounds
EKP	epikeratoprosthesis	FHT	fetal heart tone
ELF	elective low forceps	FLSA	follicular lymphosarcoma

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

FME	full-mouth extraction	GTT	glucose tolerance test
FS	frozen section; fracture site	gtt	drop
FT	full term	GU	genitourinary; gastric ulcer
FTA	fluorescent treponemal antibody test	GVHR	graft-versus-host reaction
5FU	fluorouracil	GYN	gynecology
FUB	functional uterine bleeding	HA	headache
FULG	fulguration	HAA	hepatitis-associated antigen
FUO	fever unknown origin	HASCVD	hypertensive arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease
FX	fracture	HASCVR	hypertensive arteriosclerotic cardiovascular renal disease
FYI	for your information	HASHD	hypertensive arteriosclerotic heart disease
GAS	generalized arteriosclerosis	HC	Huntington's chorea
GB	gallbladder; Guillain-Barre (syndrome)	HCT	hematocrit
GC	gonococcus; gonorrhea; general circulation (systemic)	HCVD	hypertensive cardiovascular disease
GE	gastroesophageal	HCVRD	hypertensive cardiovascular renal disease
GEN	generalized	HD	Hodgkin's disease; heart disease
GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease	HDN	hemolytic disease of newborn
GI	gastrointestinal	HDS	herniated disc syndrome
GIT	gastrointestinal tract	HEM	hemorrhage
GMSD	grand mal seizure disorder		
GOK	God only knows		
GSW	gunshot wound		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

HF	heart failure; hay fever	HVD	hypertensive vascular disease
HGB; Hgb	hemoglobin	Hx	history of
HHD	hypertensive heart disease	IADH	inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus	IASD	interatrial septal defect
HMD	hyaline membrane disease	ICCE	intracapsular cataract extraction
HN <sub>2</sub>	nitrogen mustard	ICD	intrauterine contraceptive device
HNP	herniated nucleus pulposus	I&D	incision and drainage
H/O	history of	ID	infectious disease; incision and drainage
HPN	hypertension	IDA	iron deficiency anemia
HPVD	hypertensive pulmonary vascular disease	IDD	insulin-dependent diabetes
HRE	high-resolution electro-cardiology	IDDI	insulin-dependent diabetes
HS	herpes simplex; Hurler's syndrome	IDDM	insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
HSV	herpes simplex virus	IGA	immunoglobulin A
HTLV	human T-cell lymphotropic virus	IHD	ischemic heart disease
HTLV-III/LAV	human T-cell lymphotropic virus-III/lymphadenopathy-associated virus	IHSS	idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis
HTLV-3	human T-cell lymphotropic virus-III	ILD	ischemic leg disease
HTLV-III	human T-cell lymphotropic virus-III	IM	intramuscular; intramedullary; infectious mononucleosis
HTN	hypertension	IMPP	intermittent positive pressure

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

INAD	infantile neuroaxonal dystrophy	IVP	intravenous pyelogram
INC	incomplete	IVSD	intraventricular septal defect
INE	infantile necrotizing encephalomyelopathy	IVU	intravenous urethrography
INF	infection; infected; infantile; infarction	IWMI	inferior wall myocardial infarction
INH	Isoniazid; inhalation	JBE	Japanese B encephalitis
INS	idiopathic nephrotic syndrome	KFS	Klippel-Feil syndrome
IRHD	inactive rheumatic heart disease	KS	Klinefelter's syndrome
ISD	interatrial septal defect	KUB	kidney, ureter, bladder
ITP	idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura	K-W	Kimmelstiel-Wilson disease or syndrome
IU	intrauterine	LAP	laparotomy
IUCD	intrauterine contraceptive device	LAV	lymphadenopathy-associated virus
IUD	intrauterine device (contraceptive); intrauterine death	LAV/ HTLV-III	lymphadenopathy-associated virus/Human T-cell lymphotropic virus-III
IUP	intrauterine pregnancy	LBBB	left bundle branch block
IV	intervenous; intravenous	LBNA	lysis bladder neck adhesions
IVC	intravenous cholangiography; inferior vena cava	LBW	low birth weight
IVCC	intravascular consumption coagulopathy	LBWI	low birth weight infant
IVD	intervertebral disc	LCA	left coronary artery
IVH	intraventricular hemorrhage	LDH	lactic dehydrogenase
		LE	lupus erythematosus; lower extremity; left eye

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

LKS	liver, kidney, spleen	LV	left ventricle
LL	lower lobe	LVF	left ventricular failure
LLL	left lower lobe	LVH	left ventricular hypertrophy
LLQ	lower left quadrant	MAC	mycobacterium avium complex
LMA	left mentoanterior (position of fetus)	MAI	mycobacterium avium intracellulare
LML	left middle lobe; left mesiolateral	MAL	malignant
LMCAT	left middle cerebral artery thrombosis	MBAI	mycobacterium avium intracellulare
LML	left mesiolateral; left mediolateral (episiotomy)	MBD	minimal brain damage
LMP	last menstrual period; left mento- posterior (position of fetus)	MD	muscular dystrophy; manic depressive; myocardial damage
LN	lupus nephritis	MDA	methylene dioxyamphetamine
LOA	left occipitoanterior	MEA	multiple endocrine adenomatosis
LOMCS	left otitis media chronic serous	MF	myocardial failure; myocardial fibrosis; mycosis fungoides
LP	lumbar puncture	MGN	membranous glomerulonephritis
LRI	lower respiratory infection	MHN	massive hepatic necrosis
LS	lumbosacral; lymphosarcoma	MI	myocardial infarction; mitral insufficiency
LSD	lysergic acid diethylamide	MPC	meperidine, promethazine, chlorpromazine
LSK	liver, spleen, kidney	MRS	methicillin resistant staphylococcal
LUL	left upper lobe	MRSA	methicillin resistant staphylococcal aureus
LUQ	left upper quadrant		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

MRSAU	methicillin resistant staphylococcal aureus	OAD	obstructive airway disease
MS	multiple sclerosis; mitral stenosis	OB	obstetrical
MSOF	multi-system organ failure	OBS	organic brain syndrome
MT	malignant teratoma	OBST	obstructive; obstetrical
MUA	myelogram	OD	overdose; oculus dexter (right eye); occupational disease
MVP	mitral valve prolapse	OHD	organic heart disease
MVR	mitral valve regurgitation; mitral valve replacement	OLT	orthotopic liver transplant
NACD	no anatomical cause of death	OM	otitis media
NCA	neurocirculatory asthenia	OMI	old myocardial infarction
NDI	nephrogenic diabetes insipidus	OMS	organic mental syndrome
NEG	negative	ORIF	open reduction, internal fixation
NFI	no further information	OS	oculus sinister (left eye); occipitosacral (fetal position)
NFTD	normal full-term delivery	OT	occupational therapy; old TB
NG	nasogastric	OU	oculus uterque (each eye); both eyes
NH <sub>3</sub>	symbol for ammonia	PA	pernicious anemia; paralysis agitans; pulmonary artery; peripheral arteriosclerosis
NIDD	non-insulin-dependent diabetes	PAC	premature auricular contraction; phenacetin, aspirin, caffeine
NIDDI	non-insulin-dependent diabetes	PAF	paroxysmal auricular fibrillation
NIDDM	non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus	PAOD	peripheral arterial occlusive disease; peripheral arteriosclerosis occlusive disease
N&V	nausea and vomiting	PAP	primary atypical pneumonia
NVD	nausea, vomiting, diarrhea		
OA	osteoarthritis		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

PAS	pulmonary artery stenosis	PIE	pulmonary interstitial emphysema
PAT	pregnancy at term; paroxysmal auricular tachycardia	PIP	proximal interphalangeal joint
Pb	chemical symbol for lead	PKU	phenylketonuria
PCD	polycystic disease	PMD	progressive muscular dystrophy
PCF	passive congestive failure	PMI	posterior myocardial infarction; point of maximum impulse
PCP	pentachlorophenol; pneumocystis carinii pneumonia	PML	progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
PCT	porphyria cutanea tarda	PN	pneumonia; periarteritis nodosa; pyelonephritis
PCV	polycythemia vera	PO	postoperative
PDA	patent ductus arteriosus	POC	product of conception
PE	pulmonary embolism; pleural effusion; pulmonary edema	POE	point (or portal) of entry
PEG	percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy; pneumoencephalography	PP	postpartum
PEGT	percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy tube	POSS	possible; possibly
PET	pre-eclamptic toxemia	PPD	purified protein derivative test for tuberculosis
PG	pregnant; prostaglandin	PPH	postpartum hemorrhage
PGH	pituitary growth hormone	PPLO	pleuropneumonia-like organism
PH	past history; prostatic hypertrophy; pulmonary hypertension	PPS	postpump syndrome
PI	pulmonary infarction	PPT	precipitated; prolonged prothrombin time
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease; prolapsed intervertebral disc	PREM	prematurity
		PROB	probably

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

PROM	premature rupture of membranes	PX	pneumothorax
PSVT	paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia	R	right
PT	paroxysmal tachycardia; pneumothorax; prothrombin time	RA	rheumatoid arthritis; right atrium; right auricle
PTA	persistent truncus arteriosus	RAAA	ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm
PTC	plasma thromboplastin component	RAD	radiation absorbed dose
PTCA	percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty	RAI	radioactive iodine
PTLA	percutaneous transluminal laser angioplasty	RBBB	right bundle branch block
PU	peptic ulcer	RBC	red blood cells
PUD	peptic ulcer disease; pulmonary disease	RCA	right coronary artery
PUO	pyrexia of unknown origin	RCS	reticulum cell sarcoma
P&V	pyloroplasty and vagotomy	RD	Raynaud's disease; respiratory disease
PVC	premature ventricular contraction	RDS	respiratory distress syndrome
PVD	peripheral vascular disease; pulmonary vascular disease	RE	regional enteritis
PVI	peripheral vascular insufficiency	REG	radioencephalogram
PVL	periventricular leukomalacia	RESP	respiratory
PVT	paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia	RHD	rheumatic heart disease
PVS	premature ventricular systole (contraction)	RLF	retrolental fibroplasia
PWI	posterior wall infarction	RLL	right lower lobe
PWMI	posterior wall myocardial infarction	RLQ	right lower quadrant
		RMCA	right middle cerebral artery
		RMCA	right middle cerebral artery thrombosis

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

RML	right middle lobe	SBP	spontaneous bacterial peritonitis
RMLE	right mediolateral episiotomy	SC	sickle cell
RNA	ribonucleic acid	SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
RND	radical neck dissection	SCI	subcoma insulin; spinal cord injury
R/O	rule out	SD	spontaneous delivery; septal defect; sudden death
RSA	reticulum cell sarcoma	SDAT	senile dementia Alzheimer's type
RSR	regular sinus rhythm	SDII	sudden infant death in infancy
Rt	right	SDS	sudden death syndrome
RT	recreational therapy; right	SEPT	septicemia
RTA	renal tubular acidosis	SF	scarlet fever
RUL	right upper lobe	SGA	small for gestational age
RUQ	right upper quadrant	SH	serum hepatitis
RV	right ventricle	SI	saline injection
RVH	right ventricular hypertrophy	SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
RVT	renal vein thrombosis	SICD	sudden infant crib death
RX	drugs <u>or</u> other therapy <u>or</u> treatment	SID	sudden infant death
SA	sarcoma; secondary anemia	SIDS	sudden infant death syndrome
SACD	subacute combined degeneration	SIRS	systemic inflammatory response syndrome
SARS	severe acute respiratory syndrome	SLC	short leg cast
SBE	subacute bacterial endocarditis	SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus; Saint Louis encephalitis
SBO	small bowel obstruction	SMR	submucous resection

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

SNB	scalene node biopsy	SUDI	sudden unexplained death of an infant
SO or S&O	salpingo-oophorectomy	SUID	sudden unexpected infant death
SOB	shortness of breath	SVC	superior vena cava
SOM	secretory otitis media	SVD	spontaneous vaginal delivery
SOR	suppurative otitis, recurrent	SVT	supraventricular tachycardia
S/P	status post	Sx	symptoms
SPD	sociopathic personality disturbance	SY	syndrome
SPP	suprapubic prostatectomy	T&A	tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy
SQ	subcutaneous	TAH	total abdominal hysterectomy
S/R	schizophrenic reaction; sinus rhythm	TAL	tendon achilles lengthening
S/p P/T	schizophrenic reaction, paranoid type	TAO	Triacetyloleandomycin (antibiotic); thromboangiitis obliterans
SSE	soapsuds enema	TAPVR	total anomalous pulmonary venous return
SSKI	saturated solution potassium iodide	TAR	thrombocytopenia absent radius (syndrome)
SSPE	subacute sclerosing panencephalitis	TAT	tetanus anti-toxin
STAPH	staphylococcal; staphylococcus	TB	tuberculosis; tracheobronchitis
STB	stillborn	TBC, Tbc	tuberculosis
STREP	streptococcal; streptococcus	TCI	transient cerebral ischemia
STS	serological test for syphilis	TEF	tracheoesophageal fistula
STSG	split thickness skin graft	TF	tetralogy of Fallot
SUBQ	subcutaneous	TGV	transposition great vessels
SUD	sudden unexpected death		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

THA	total hip arthroplasty	UP	uteropelvic
TI	tricuspid insufficiency	UPJ	ureteropelvic junction
TIA	transient ischemic attack	URI	upper respiratory infection
TIE	transient ischemic episode	UTI	urinary tract infection
TL	tubal ligation	VAMP	vincristine, amethopterin, 6-mercaptopurine, and prednisone
TM	tympanic membrane	VB	vinblastine
TOA	tubo-ovarian abscess	VC	vincristine
TP	thrombocytopenic purpura	VD	venereal disease
TR	tricuspid regurgitation, transfusion reaction	VDRL	venereal disease research lab
TSD	Tay-Sachs disease	VEE	Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis
TTP	thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura	VF	ventricular fibrillation
TUI	transurethral incision	VH	vaginal hysterectomy; viral hepatitis
TUR	transurethral resection (NOS) (prostate)	VL	vas ligation
TURP	transurethral resection of prostate	VM	viomycin
TVP	total anomalous venous return	V&P	vagotomy and pyloroplasty
UC	ulcerative colitis	VPC, VPCS	ventricular premature contractions
UGI	upper gastrointestinal	VR	valve replacement
UL	upper lobe	VSD	ventricular septal defect
UNK	unknown	VT	ventricular tachycardia

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

WBC	white blood cell
WC	whooping cough
WE	Western encephalomyelitis
W/O	without
WPW	Wolfe-Parkinson-White syndrome
YF	yellow fever
ZE	Zollinger-Ellison (syndrome)
'	minute
"	second(s)
↓	decreased
↑	increased; elevated
$\bar{c}$	with
$\bar{s}$	without
$\frac{00}{11}$	secondary to
$\frac{00}{11}$ to	secondary to

## Appendix B

### Synonymous Sites

---

When a condition of a stated anatomical site is indexed in Volume 3, code condition of stated site as indexed. If stated site is not indexed, code condition of synonymous site.

Alimentary canal	Gastrointestinal tract
Body	Trunk, torso
Brain	Pons, frontal, temporal, parietal, occipital, prefrontal, anterior fossa, posterior fossa, III and IV ventricle, cerebral, cerebrum, basal ganglion, central nervous system  Note: Do not use brain when ICD provides for CNS under the reported condition.
Cardiac	Heart
Chest	Thorax
Greater sac	Peritoneum
Hepatic	Liver
Hepatocellular	Liver
Intestine	Bowel, colon
Kidney	Renal
Lesser sac	Peritoneum
Pharynx	Throat
Pulmonary	Lung
Vocal cords	Larynx
Right\left hemispheric	Code brain
Hemispheric NOS	Do not assume brain
Right\left ventricle	Heart
Third\fourth ventricle	Brain
LLL, LUL, RUL, RML, RLL	Lobes of the lungs when reported with lobectomy, pneumonia, etc

# Appendix C

## Geographic Codes

<u>State</u>	<u>FIPS Alpha</u>	<u>State</u>	<u>FIPS Alpha</u>
Alabama	AL	Nebraska	NE
Alaska	AK	Nevada	NV
Arizona	AZ	New Hampshire	NH
Arkansas	AR	New Jersey	NJ
California	CA	New Mexico	NM
Colorado	CO	New York	NY
Connecticut	CT	North Carolina	NC
Delaware	DE	North Dakota	ND
District of Columbia	DC	Ohio	OH
Florida	FL	Oklahoma	OK
Georgia	GA	Oregon	OR
Hawaii	HI	Pennsylvania	PA
Idaho	ID	Puerto Rico	PR
Illinois	IL	Rhode Island	RI
Indiana	IN	South Carolina	SC
Iowa	IA	South Dakota	SD
Kansas	KS	Tennessee	TN
Kentucky	KY	Texas	TX
Louisiana	LA	Utah	UT
Maine	ME	Vermont	VT
Maryland	MD	Virginia	VA
Massachusetts	MA	Virgin Islands	VI
Michigan	MI	Washington	WA
Minnesota	MN	West Virginia	WV
Mississippi	MS	Wisconsin	WI
Missouri	MO	Wyoming	WY
Montana	MT		
<b>Territories and Outlying Areas</b>			
American Samoa	AS	<u>US Minor Outlying Islands</u>	UM*
Federated States of Micronesia	FM	Baker Island	
Guam	GU	Howland Island	
Marshall Islands	MH	Jarvis Island	
Northern Mariana Islands	MP	Johnston Atoll	
Palau	PW	Kingman Reef	
Puerto Rico	PR	Midway Islands	
Virgin Islands (US)	VI	Navassa Island	
		Palmyra Atoll	
		Wake Island	

\*Not recognized as a valid USPS State abbreviation

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Injury

---

#### 0. Home

**Excludes:** Abandoned or derelict house (8)  
Home under construction, but not yet occupied (6)  
Institutional place of residence (1)

About home  
Apartment  
Boarding house  
Cabin (any type)  
Caravan (trailer) park - residential  
Condominium  
Farm house  
Hogan  
Home premises  
Home sidewalk  
Home swimming pool  
House (residential) (trailer)  
Noninstitutional place of residence  
Penthouse  
Private driveway to home  
Private garage  
Private garden to home  
Private walk to home  
Private wall to home  
Residence  
Rooming house  
Storage building at apartment  
Swimming pool in private home or  
garden  
Townhome  
Trailer camp or court  
Yard (any part)  
Yard to home

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Injury

---

1. Residential institution

Almshouse  
Army camp  
Board and care facility  
Children's home  
Convalescent home  
Dormitory  
Fraternity house  
Halfway house  
Home for the sick  
Hospice  
Institution (any type)  
Jail  
Military (camp) (reservation)  
Nurse's home  
Nursing home  
Old people's home  
Orphanage  
Penitentiary  
Pensioner's home  
Prison  
Prison camp  
Reform school  
Retirement home  
Sorority house  
State hospital

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Injury

---

#### 2. School, other institution and public administrative area

**Excludes:** Building under construction (6)  
Residential institution (1)  
Sports and athletic areas (3)

Armory	Police station or cell
Assembly hall	Post office
Campus	Private club
Child center	Public building
Church	Public hall
Cinema	Salvation army
Clubhouse	School (grounds) (yard)
College	School (private) (public) (state)
Country club (grounds)	Theatre
Court house	Turkish bath
Dance hall	University
Day nursery (Day care)	YMCA
Drive in theater	Youth center
Fire house	YWCA
Gallery	
Health club	
Health resort	
Health spa	
Hospital	
Institute of higher learning	
Kindergarten	
Library	
Mission	
Movie house	
Museum	
Music hall	
Night club	
Opera house	
Playground, school	
Police precinct	

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Injury

---

#### 3. Sports and athletics area

**Excludes:** Swimming pool or tennis court in private home or garden (0)

Baseball field  
Basketball court  
Cricket ground  
Dude ranch  
Fives court  
Football field  
Golf course  
Gymnasium  
Hockey field  
Ice palace  
Racecourse  
Riding school  
Rifle range - NOS  
Skating rink  
Sports ground  
Sports palace  
Squash court  
Stadium  
Swimming pool (public) (private)  
Tennis court

#### 4. Street and highway

Alley  
Border crossing  
Bridge NOS  
Freeway  
Interstate  
Motorway  
Named street/highway/interstate  
Pavement  
Road  
Roadside  
Sidewalk NOS

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Injury

---

#### 5. Trade and service area

**Excludes:** Garage in private home (0)

Airport  
Bank  
Bar  
Body shop  
Cafe  
Casino  
Electric company  
Filling station  
Funeral home  
Garage - place of work  
Garage away from highway except home  
Garage building (for car storage)  
Garage NOS  
Gas station  
Hotel (pool)  
Loading platform - store  
Market (grocery or other commodity)  
Motel  
Office (building)  
Radio/television broadcasting station  
Restaurant  
Salvage lot, named  
Service station  
Shop, commercial  
Shopping center (Shopping mall)  
Station (bus) (railway)  
Store  
Subway (stairs)  
Tourist court  
Tourist home  
Warehouse

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Injury

---

#### 6. Industrial and construction areas

Building under construction  
Coal pit  
Coal yard  
Construction job  
Dairy processing plant  
Dockyard  
Dry dock  
Electric tower  
Factory (building) (premises)  
Foundry  
Gas works  
Grain elevator  
Gravel pit  
Highway under construction  
Industrial yard  
Loading platform - factory  
Logging operation area  
Lumber yard  
Mill pond  
Oil field  
Oil rig and other offshore installations  
Oil well  
Plant, industrial  
Power-station (coal) (nuclear) (oil)  
Produce building  
Railroad track or trestle  
Railway yard  
Sand pit  
Sawmill  
Sewage disposal plant  
Shipyard  
Shop  
Substation (power)  
Subway track  
Tannery  
Tunnel under construction  
Wharf  
Workshop

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Injury

---

#### 7. Farm

**Excludes:** Farm house and home premises of farm (0)

Barn NOS  
Barnyard  
Corncrib  
Cornfield  
Dairy (farm) NOS  
Farm buildings  
Farm pond or creek  
Farmland under cultivation  
Field, numbered or specialized  
Gravel pit on farm  
Orange grove  
Pasture  
Ranch NOS  
Range NOS  
Silo  
State Farm

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Injury

---

#### 8. Other specified places

Abandoned gravel pit	Named room
Abandoned public building or home	Named town
Air force firing range	Nursery NOS
Bar pit or ditch	Open field
Beach NOS (private) (named)	Park (any) (amusement) (public)
Beach resort	Parking lot
Boy's camp	Parking place
Building NOS	Pier
Camp	Pipeline (oil)
Camping grounds	Place of business NOS
Campsite	Playground NOS
Canal	Pond or pool (natural)
Caravan site NOS	Power line pole
Cemetery	Prairie
City dump	Private property
Creek (bank) (embankment)	Public place NOS
Damsite	Public property
Derelict house	Railway line
Desert	Reservoir (water)
Ditch	Resort NOS
Dock NOS	River
Excavation site	Sea
Fairgrounds	Seashore NOS
Field NOS	Seashore resort
Forest	Sewer
Fort	Specified address
Harbor	Stream
Hill	Swamp
Holiday camp	Vacation resort
Irrigation canal or ditch	Woods
Junkyard	Zoo
Lake NOS	
Lake resort	
Manhole	
Marsh	
Military training ground	
Mountain	
Mountain resort	
Named city	
Named lake	

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Injury

---

9. Unspecified place

Bed  
Commode  
Country  
Downstairs  
Fireplace  
Hot tub  
Jobsite  
Near any place  
On job  
Parked car  
Sofa  
Table  
Tree  
Vehicle (any)

## Appendix E

### Activity Codes

---

The ICD-10 provides a subclassification for use with external causes and injuries to indicate the activity of the injured person at the time the event occurred. This appendix is designed to document the ICD-10 activity code information but it is not entered in manual coding.

Information may be scattered over different parts of the medical certification, Part I, Part II, 41, 43, etc. However, do not use the information in “Injury at work?” block to code this variable.

If no information concerning the activity of the injured person is reported on the certificate, the item is left blank. “While drinking alcohol” or “while driving” is not considered as a codable activity. When two or more codes appear to be appropriate for the information reported, activity code 8 is assigned.

#### **0 While engaged in sports activity**

Physical exercise with a described functional element such as:

- . golf
- . jogging
- . riding
- . school athletics
- . skiing
- . swimming
- . trekking
- . waterskiing

#### **1 While engaged in leisure activity**

Hobby activities

Leisure time activities with an entertainment element such as going to the cinema, to a dance or to a party

Participation in sessions and activities of voluntary organizations

**Excludes:** sport activities (0)

#### **2 While working for income**

Paid work (manual) (professional)

Transportation (time) to and from such activities

Work for salary, bonus and other types of income

## Appendix E

### Activity Codes

---

- 3     While engaged in other types of work**  
Domestic duties such as:  
  . caring for children and relatives  
  . cleaning  
  . cooking  
  . gardening  
  . household maintenance  
Duties for which one would not normally gain an income  
Learning activities, e.g. attending school session or lesson  
Undergoing education
- 4     While resting, sleeping, eating and other vital activities**  
Personal hygiene
- 8     While engaged in other specified activities**

## Appendix F

### Substitute Codes

The following categories are invalid for use in coding and processing the multiple cause data. Substitute code(s) for use in multiple cause coding appears in the right column.

Use the following substitute codes when conditions classifiable to the following codes are reported:

<u>Invalid Code</u>	<u>Substitute Code</u>	<u>Invalid Code</u>	<u>Substitute code</u>
A150	A162	F708	F70 (3-characters only)
A151	A162	F709	F70 (3-characters only)
A152	A162	F710	F71 (3-characters only)
A153	A162	F711	F71 (3-characters only)
A154	A163	F718	F71 (3-characters only)
A155	A164	F719	F71 (3-characters only)
A156	A165	F720	F72 (3-characters only)
A157	A167	F721	F72 (3-characters only)
A158	A168	F728	F72 (3-characters only)
A159	A169	F729	F72 (3-characters only)
A160	A162	F730	F73 (3-characters only)
A161	A162	F731	F73 (3-characters only)
B95-B97 Code the disease(s) classified to other chapters modified by the organism. Do not enter a code for the organism.		F738	F73 (3-characters only)
		F739	F73 (3-characters only)
		F780	F78 (3-characters only)
F700	F70 (3-characters only)	F781	F78 (3-characters only)
F701	F70 (3-characters only)	F788	F78 (3-characters only)

## Appendix F

### Substitute Codes

<u>Invalid Code</u>	<u>Substitute Code</u>	<u>Invalid Code</u>	<u>Substitute Code</u>
F789	F78 (3-characters only)	T010, T011, T016, T018	Open wound of specified sites
F790	F79 (3-characters only)	T020, T026, T027	Fractures of specified sites
F791	F79 (3-characters only)	T030, T034	Dislocations, sprains, and strains of specified sites
F798	F79 (3-characters only)	T040, T044, T047	Crushing injuries of specified sites
F799	F79 (3-characters only)	T051, T054, T056	Traumatic amputations of specified site
I150	I129	T060, T061, T068	Injuries of specified sites
I151-I152 I158-I159	R99	T29.-	Burns of specified sites
I23.-	I21-I22		
I24.0	I21 or I22		
I65.-	I63		
I66.-	I63		
O80	O95		
O81-084	O759		
P95	P969		
R69	R95-R99		
T000, T001, T006	Superficial injuries of specified sites		

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

#### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

NCHS has developed a set of new codes within the framework of the ICD that will allow the identification of deaths from terrorism reported on death certificates through the National Vital Statistics System. Terrorism-related ICD-10 codes for mortality have been assigned to the “U” category which has been designated by WHO for use by individual countries. The asterisk preceding the alphanumeric code indicates the code was introduced by the United States and is not officially part of the ICD.

To classify a death as terrorist-related, it is necessary for the incident to be designated as such by the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI). Neither a medical examiner nor a coroner who would be completing/certifying the death certificate, nor the nosologist coding the death certificate would determine that an incident is an act of terrorism. If an incident or event is confirmed by the FBI as terrorism, it may be so described on the certificate. If the incident is confirmed as terrorism after the death certificate is completed, the certificate can be recorded at a later date.

#### **Not to be used unless notified by NCHS.**

#### Tabular List

#### **Assault (homicide)**

#### **\*U01-\*U02**

#### **\*U01**

#### **Terrorism**

***Includes:*** assault-related injuries resulting from the unlawful use of force or violence against persons or property to intimidate or coerce a Government, the civilian population, or any segment thereof, in furtherance of political or social objectives

#### **\*U01.0**

#### **Terrorism involving explosion of marine weapons**

- Depth-charge
- Marine mine
- Mine NOS, at sea or in harbor
- Sea-based artillery shell
- Torpedo
- Underwater blast

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

- \*U01.1**      **Terrorism involving destruction of aircraft**  
*Includes:* aircraft used as a weapon
- Aircraft:
- burned
  - exploded
  - shot down
- Crushed by falling aircraft
- \*U01.2**      **Terrorism involving other explosions and fragments**  
Antipersonnel bomb (fragments)  
Blast NOS  
Explosion (of):
- NOS
  - artillery shell
  - breech-block
  - cannon block
  - mortar bomb
  - munitions being used in terrorism
  - own weapons
- Fragments from:
- artillery shell
  - bomb
  - grenade
  - guided missile
  - land-mine
  - rocket
  - shell
  - shrapnel
- Mine NOS

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

<b>*U01.3</b>	<b>Terrorism involving fires, conflagration and hot substances</b>	
	Asphyxia Burns Other injury	} originating from fire caused directly by fire-producing device or indirectly by any conventional weapon
	Petrol bomb	
	Collapse of Fall from Falling from Hit by object Jump from	} burning building or structure
	Conflagration	
	Fire Melting Smoldering	} of fittings or furniture
<b>*U01.4</b>	<b>Terrorism involving firearms</b>	
	Bullet: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• carbine</li><li>• machine gun</li><li>• pistol</li><li>• rifle</li><li>• rubber (rifle)</li></ul> Pellets (shotgun)	
<b>*U01.5</b>	<b>Terrorism involving nuclear weapons</b>	
	Blast effects Exposure to ionizing radiation from nuclear weapon Fireball effects Heat Other direct and secondary effects of nuclear weapons	

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

- \*U01.6**      **Terrorism involving biological weapons**  
Anthrax  
Cholera  
Smallpox
- \*U01.7**      **Terrorism involving chemical weapons**  
Gases, fumes and chemicals:  
• Hydrogen cyanide  
• Phosgene  
• Sarin
- \*U01.8**      **Terrorism, other specified**  
Lasers  
Battle wounds  
Drowned in terrorist operations NOS  
Piercing or stabbing object injuries
- \*U01.9**      **Terrorism, unspecified**
- \*U02**        **Sequelae of terrorism**

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

#### Intentional self-harm (suicide)

\*U03

\*U03        **Terrorism**

\*U03.0      **Terrorism involving explosions and fragments**

*Includes:* destruction of aircraft used as a weapon

Aircraft:

- burned
- exploded
- shot down

Antipersonnel bomb (fragments)

Blast NOS

Explosion (of):

- NOS
- artillery shell
- breech-block
- cannon block
- mortar bomb
- munitions being used in terrorism
- own weapons

Fragments from:

- artillery shell
- bomb
- grenade
- guided missile
- land-mine
- rocket
- shell
- shrapnel

Mine NOS

\*U03.9      **Terrorism by other and unspecified means**

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

#### Alphabetical Index

##### **Air**

- blast in terrorism U01.2

##### **Asphyxia, asphyxiation**

- by

- - chemical in terrorism U01.7

- - fumes in terrorism (chemical weapons) U01.7

- - gas (*see also* Table of drugs and chemicals)

- - - in terrorism (chemical weapons) U01.7

- from

- - fire (*see also* Exposure, fire)

- - - in terrorism U01.3

##### **Bayonet wound**

- in

- - terrorism U01.8

##### **Blast (air) in terrorism U01.2**

- from nuclear explosion U01.5

- underwater U01.0

##### **Burn, burned, burning (by) (from) (on)**

- chemical (external) (internal)

- - in terrorism (chemical weapons) U01.7

- in terrorism (from fire-producing device) NEC U01.3

- - nuclear explosion U01.5

- - petrol bomb U01.3

##### **Casualty (not due to war) NEC**

- terrorism U01.9

##### **Collapse**

- building

- - burning (uncontrolled fire)

- - - in terrorism U01.3

- structure

- - burning (uncontrolled fire)

- - - in terrorism U01.3

##### **Crash**

- aircraft (powered)

- - in terrorism U01.1

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

#### **Crushed**

- between objects (moving) (stationary and moving)
- by, in
- - falling
- - - aircraft
- - - - in terrorism U01.1

#### **Cut, cutting (any part of body) (by) (see also Contact, with, by object or machine)**

- terrorism U01.8

#### **Drowning**

- in
- - terrorism U01.8

#### **Effects(s) (adverse) of**

- nuclear explosion or weapon in terrorism (blast) (direct) (fireball) (heat) (radiation) (secondary) U01.5

#### **Explosion (in) (of) (on) (with secondary fire)**

- terrorism U01.2

#### **Exposure to**

- fire (with exposure to smoke or fumes or causing burns, or secondary explosion)
- - in, of, on, starting in
- - - terrorism (by fire-producing device) U01.3
- - - - fittings or furniture (burning building) (uncontrolled fire) U01.3
- - - - from nuclear explosion U01.5

#### **Fall, falling**

- from, off
- - building
- - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - in terrorism U01.3
- - structure NEC
- - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - in terrorism U01.3

#### **Fireball effects from nuclear explosion in terrorism U01.5**

#### **Heat (effects of) (excessive)**

- from
- - nuclear explosion in terrorism U01.5

#### **Injury, injured NEC**

- by, caused by, from
- - terrorism – *see* Terrorism
- due to
- - terrorism – *see* Terrorism

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

#### **Jumped, jumping**

- from
- - building (*see also* Jumped, from, high place)
- - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - in terrorism U01.3
- - structure (*see also* Jumped, from, high place)
- - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - in terrorism U01.3

#### **Poisoning (by)** (*see also* Table of drugs and chemicals)

- in terrorism (chemical weapons) U01.7

#### **Radiation (exposure to)**

- in
- - terrorism (from or following nuclear explosion) (direct) (secondary) U01.5
- - - laser(s) U01.8
- laser(s)
- - in terrorism U01.8

#### **Sequelae (of)**

- in terrorism U02

#### **Shooting, shot** (*see also* Discharge, by type of firearm)

- in terrorism U01.4

#### **Struck by**

- bullet (*see also* Discharge, by type of firearm)
- - in terrorism U01.4
- missile
- - in terrorism – *see* Terrorism, missile
- object
- - falling
- - - from, in, on
- - - - building
- - - - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - - in terrorism U01.3

#### **Suicide, suicidal, (attempted) (by)**

- explosive(s) (material)
- - in terrorism U03.0
- in terrorism U03.9

#### **Terrorism (by) (in) (injury) (involving)** U01.9

- air blast U01.2
- aircraft burned, destroyed, exploded, shot down U01.1
- - used as a weapon U01.1.
- anthrax U01.6

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

#### **Terrorism**----*continued*

- asphyxia from
  - chemical (weapons) U01.7
  - fire, conflagration (caused by fire-producing device) U01.3
  - from nuclear explosion U01.5
  - gas or fumes U01.7
- bayonet U01.8
- biological agents (weapons) U01.6
- blast (air) (effects) U01.2
  - from nuclear explosion U01.5
  - underwater U01.0
- bomb (antipersonnel) (mortar) (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
  - petrol U01.3
- bullet(s) (from carbine, machine gun, pistol, rifle, rubber (rifle), shotgun) U01.4
- burn from
  - chemical U01.7
  - fire, conflagration (caused by fire-producing device) U01.3
  - from nuclear explosion U01.5
  - gas U01.7
- burning aircraft U01.1
- chemical (weapons) U01.7
- cholera U01.6
- conflagration U01.3
- crushed by falling aircraft U01.1
- depth-charge U01.0
- destruction of aircraft U01.1
- disability as sequelae one year or more after injury U02
- drowning U01.8
- effect (direct) (secondary) of nuclear weapon U01.5
  - sequelae U02
- explosion (artillery shell) (breech-block) (cannon block) U01.2
  - aircraft U01.1
  - bomb (antipersonnel) (mortar) U01.2
  - nuclear (atom) (hydrogen) U01.5
  - depth-charge U01.0
  - grenade U01.2
  - injury by fragments (from) U01.2
  - land-mine U01.2
  - marine weapon(s) U01.0

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

#### **Terrorism**----*continued*

- - mine (land) U01.2
- - - at sea or in harbor U01.0
- - - marine U01.0
- - missile (explosive) (guided) NEC U01.2
- - munitions (dump) (factory) U01.2
- - nuclear (weapon) U01.5
- - other direct and secondary effects of U01.5
- - own weapons U01.2
- - sea-based artillery shell U01.0
- - torpedo U01.0
- exposure to ionizing radiation from nuclear explosion U01.5
- falling aircraft U01.1
- fire or fire-producing device U01.3
- firearms U01.4
- fireball effects from nuclear explosion U01.5
- fragments from artillery shell, bomb NEC, grenade, guided missile, land-mine, rocket, shell, shrapnel U01.2
- gas or fumes U01.7
- grenade (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- guided missile (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- - nuclear U01.5
- heat from nuclear explosion U01.5
- hot substances U01.3
- hydrogen cyanide U01.7
- land-mine (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- laser(s) U01.8
- late effect (of) U02
- lewisite U01.7
- lung irritant (chemical ) (fumes) (gas) U01.7
- marine mine U01.0
- mine U01.2
- - at sea U01.0
- - in harbor U01.0
- - land (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- - marine U01.0
- missile (explosion) (fragments) (guided) U01.2
- - marine U01.0
- - nuclear U01.5

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

#### **Terrorism**----*continued*

- mortar bomb (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- mustard gas U01.7
- nerve gas U01.7
- nuclear weapons U01.5
- pellets (shotgun) U01.4
- petrol bomb U01.3
- piercing object U01.8
- phosgene U01.7
- poisoning (chemical) (fumes) (gas) U01.7
- radiation, ionizing from nuclear explosion U01.5
- rocket (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- saber, sabre U01.8
- sarin U01.7
- screening smoke U01.7
- sequelae effect (of) U02
- shell (aircraft) (artillery) (cannon) (land-based) (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- - sea-based U01.0
- shooting U01.4
- - bullet(s) U01.4
- - pellet(s) (rifle) (shotgun) U01.4
- shrapnel U01.2
- smallpox U01.6
- stabbing object(s) U01.8
- submersion U01.8
- torpedo U01.0
- underwater blast U01.0
- vesicant (chemical) (fumes) (gas) U01.7
- weapon burst U01.2

## Appendix G

### Terrorism Classification (\*U01 - \*U03)

---

Date of death 9/11/2001

<u>PLACE</u>	I (a) Burns	T300		
5	(b) Terrorist attack on the Pentagon	&U011		
<u>MOD</u>	II			
H	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>	Homicide	<table border="1"><tr><td>The Pentagon</td></tr></table>	The Pentagon
Homicide				
The Pentagon				
		<table border="1"><tr><td>Date of injury 9/11/2001</td></tr></table>	Date of injury 9/11/2001	
Date of injury 9/11/2001				

Code as terrorism involving destruction of aircraft. The FBI declared the Pentagon incident an act of terrorism.

Date of death 9/11/2001

<u>PLACE</u>	I (a) Chest trauma	S299		
5	(b)			
<u>MOD</u>	II World Trade Center Disaster	&U011		
H	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>	Homicide	<table border="1"><tr><td>World Trade Center</td></tr></table>	World Trade Center
Homicide				
World Trade Center				
		<table border="1"><tr><td>Date of injury 9/11/2001</td></tr></table>	Date of injury 9/11/2001	
Date of injury 9/11/2001				

Code as terrorism involving destruction of aircraft. The FBI declared the World Trade Center incident an act of terrorism.

## Appendix H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

1. Place  
9 I (a) Ingested overdose of opiates and ingested alcohol T406 &X42 F109  
Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for opiate overdose. Code ingested alcohol as indexed. No evidence of alcohol and drug synergism is reported.
2. Place  
9 I (a) Ingested overdose of (opiates) and ingested alcohol T406 &X42 F109  
Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for opiate overdose. Code ingested alcohol as indexed. No evidence of alcohol and drug synergism is reported.
3. Place  
9 I (a) Intoxication by the use of cocaine and opiates T405 &X42 T406  
Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for cocaine and opiate intoxication. Since the drugs are assigned to the same external cause code, code X42. Do not enter a Chapter V code (F codes).
4. Place  
9 I (a) Intoxication by the use of (cocaine and opiates) T405 &X42 T406  
Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for cocaine and opiates intoxication. Since the drugs are assigned to the same external cause code, code X42. Do not enter a Chapter V code (F codes).
5. Place  
9 I (a) Toxic effects of cocaine abuse T405 &X42 F141  
Interpret I(a) as cocaine poisoning and cocaine abuse. Code nature of injury and external cause code for cocaine poisoning and cocaine abuse as indexed.
6. Place  
9 I (a) Toxic effects of illicit drug abuse T509 &X44 F191  
Interpret I(a) as drug poisoning and drug abuse. Code nature of injury and external cause code for drug poisoning and drug abuse as indexed.
7. Place  
9 I (a) Mixed drug intoxication alcohol and cocaine T519 X45 T405 &X42  
Interpret I(a) as poisoning and code nature of injury and external cause code for alcohol and cocaine. Precede the external cause code for the cocaine poisoning with an ampersand.

## Appendix H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

8. Place I (a) Mixed drug intoxication (alcohol and cocaine) T519 X45 T405 &X42  
9 (b)  
II Used combination cocaine and alcohol F149 F109

Interpret I(a) as poisoning and code nature of injury and external cause code for alcohol and cocaine. Precede the external cause code for cocaine poisoning with an ampersand. Code Part II, cocaine use as listed under dependence and alcohol use as indexed.

9. Place I (a) Multiple drug intoxication including T509 &X44 T402 T424 T430  
9 (b) oxycodone, diazepam, and doxepin

Code the nature of injury code for drug NOS as first entry on I(a). Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44 followed by the nature of injury code for each drug reported.

10. Place I (a) Acute multiple drug intoxication (oxycodone T402 &X44 T424  
9 (b) and alprazolam)  
II Took overdose T509

Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for oxycodone and alprazolam intoxication. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44. Code the nature of injury code for drug NOS in Part II.

11. Place I (a) Acute multiple drug intoxication (ethanol, F100 T402 &X44 T424  
9 (b) oxycodone and alprazolam)

Code first entry I(a) ethanol intoxication as indexed. Code nature of injury and external cause code for oxycodone and alprazolam intoxication. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44. No evidence of alcohol and drug synergism is reported.

12. Place I (a) Acute intoxication due to ethanol F100  
9 (b) abuse, opiate abuse F101 F111  
MOD II Drug reaction T509 &X44  
A

Accident

Code I(a) and (b) as indexed. Code Part II to drug poisoning since drug NOS is reported and the certifier stated the death was due to an accident.

## Appendix H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

13. Place I (a) Cardiac arrhythmia associated with hydroxyzine I499 T435 &X41  
9 (b) injection  
MOD (c)  
A II Hydroxyzine injection T435

Accident

Code first condition on I(a) as indexed. Code hydroxyzine injection as poisoning since it is a psychotropic drug and the certifier reported the death was due to an accident. Code nature of injury for hydroxyzine Part II.

14. I (a) Cardiac arrhythmia associated with hydroxyzine I499  
(b) injection  
(c)  
II Hydroxyzine injection

Code first condition on I(a) as indexed. No code required for the hydroxyzine injection since no complication is reported. It is considered drug therapy since the certifier did not report accident or undetermined in the manner of death block.

15. Place I (a) Acute cardiac arrhythmia precipitated by I499 T405 &X42 T406  
9 (b) cocaine and opiates  
MOD (c)  
A II Drug abuse, cocaine and opiates F141 F111

Accident

Code first condition on I(a) as indexed. Code cocaine and opiates as poisoning since the drugs are narcotics and the certifier reported the death was due to an accident. Code the nature of injury and external cause code for cocaine and opiate poisoning. Since the drugs are assigned to the same external cause code, code X42. Code cocaine abuse and opiates abuse as indexed in Part II.

16. Place I (a) Acute intravenous narcotism (heroin) F112  
9 (b)  
II Methadone overdose, heroin injection T403 &X42 T401

Code I(a) F112, acute intravenous heroin narcotism. Consider the methadone overdose and heroin injection as poisoning. Heroin is not used for medical care purposes.

## Appendix H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

17. Place I (a) Acute intravenous narcotism heroin overdose F192 T401 &X42  
9

Intrepret I(a) as two separate entities. Code acute intravenous narcotism as first entity and code a nature of injury and an external cause code for heroin overdose as second entity.

18. Place I (a) Acute intravenous narcotism F112  
9 (b) Morphine  
II Intravenous use of drugs F199

Consider I(b) as continuation of I(a). Code I(a) acute intravenous morphine narcotism and Part II as indexed.

19. I (a) Drug dependence (heroin, cocaine) F112 F142

Code I(a) heroin and cocaine dependence as indexed.

20. Place I (a) Renal failure N19  
9 (b) Drug induced hepatotoxicity T509 &X44

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as poisoning since toxicity (of a site) by a drug is one of the terms that is interpreted as poisoning.

21. Place I (a) Effects of cocaine and methamphetamine use F149 F159  
9 (b)  
MOD II Drug intake T509 &X44  
A 

Accident
----------

Code I(a) as indexed applying intent of certifier instructions for coding use of drugs. Code drug intake as poisoning since drug NOS is reported and the certifier reported the death was due to an accident.

## Appendix H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

22.	I (a) Gastric ulcer	K259
	(b) Drug intake	Y579
	(c) Arthritis	&M139

Code the gastric ulcer as a complication of the drug reported on (b). Code the E-code for drug therapy on I(b). It is considered drug therapy since the certifier did not indicate the death was due to an accident or it occurred under undetermined circumstances or the drug was taken in conjunction with alcohol. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand.